






The logo for ISS 45, consisting of the letters 'ISS' stacked above the number '45' in a large, bold, black serif font, all enclosed within a thin black rectangular border.

-  *ISS45 V8 System*
-  *Administrator's Reference*
-  *Version 8.1.3.0*
- 
- 

## ISS45 V8 System Administrator's Reference

<b>Date of Issue</b>	<b>Product Identification Number</b>	<b>Part Number</b>	<b>Brief Description</b>
October 1998	45001/034	80602980	Preliminary Release
September 1999	45001/034	89000022	Version 8.1
March 2000	45001/034	89000033	Version 8.2.0
December 2002	45001/034	89000119	Version 8.4.2
February 2006	45001/034	89000282	Version 8.1.1.0
December 2006	45001/034	89000338	Version 8.1.2.0
February 2008	45001/034	89000472	Version 8.1.3.0

**©Copyright StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 1995-2008  
All rights reserved**

This publication is protected by federal copyright law. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted into any human or computer language in any form or by any means, stored in a retrieval system, transmitted, redistributed, translated or disclosed to third parties, or de-compiled in any way including, but not limited to, photocopy, photograph, electronic, mechanical, magnetic or manual without the express written permission of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC or its licensors, if any. All copies, so authorized, shall contain a full copy of this copyright notice.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC endeavors to ensure that the information in this document is correct and fairly stated but does not accept liability for any error or omission. StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC makes no representation or warranties with respect to the contents hereof, and specifically disclaims any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose or non-infringement. No commitments by StoreNext or its suppliers are made from this documentation which is provided for information only.

Development of StoreNext products and documentation is continuous: StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC reserves the right to revise this publication and to make changes from time to time in the contents hereof or in the products herein described or discussed without notice and without any obligation of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC to notify any person or organization of such revision or changes. Information published in this document will likely become obsolete over time and it is recommended that users regularly check for updates and newer versions.

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC has prepared this manual for use by users, authorized third parties and personnel of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC as a guide to the proper installation, operation, customization and/or maintenance of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC equipment and software. The drawings and specifications contained herein are the property of StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC and/or its licensors.

Third-party products, services, or company names referenced in this document may be trademarked or copyrighted by their respective owners, and are for identification purposes only.

Copyrights, trademarks and license agreements shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas and the Federal Arbitration Act, and shall benefit StoreNext, its successors, and assigns.

Address comments and corrections to:

**StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC**  
Software Program Director  
6100 Tennyson Parkway  
Suite 130  
Plano, Texas 75024



# Table of Contents

Table of Contents .....	i
<b>System Parameter Tree .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Overview.....	1-3
Using the System Parameter Tree .....	1-3
Locating Parameters.....	1-5
Setting and Updating Parameters.....	1-6
The <i>Enable</i> Feature .....	1-6
Parameter Types .....	1-8
System Parameter Explanations .....	1-19
Cash Office Parameters .....	1-19
Cashier Balancing Period Parameters.....	1-19
POS Accountability Parameters .....	1-19
Print Report After .....	1-20
Function Parameters .....	1-20
Safe Parameters.....	1-24
POST Parameters .....	1-26
Operational .....	1-26
Monetary.....	1-58
Presentation.....	1-86
General .....	1-107
E_Ticket.....	1-111
Q-Buster .....	1-112
MTX EFT .....	1-113
Biometric Identification.....	1-115
Front Office Parameters .....	1-117
Alerts .....	1-117
End of Day .....	1-118
PLU and Batch .....	1-125
Reports .....	1-133
V8 Front Office as Host .....	1-137
System.....	1-137

---

 TABLE OF CONTENTS

Minimum Disk Space Drive.....	1-139
Cashier .....	1-140
ASP .....	1-140
Housekeeping.....	1-141
Common Bookkeeping .....	1-141
Electronic Journal .....	1-142
Promotions.....	1-142
Single\Multi Promotions (sub-folder).....	1-142
General .....	1-142
Table Extracts.....	1-142
POS Units and Measures .....	1-142
Programmable Barcodes .....	1-143
Starting Digit XX (sub-folder):.....	1-143
Fuel Parameters .....	1-144
Drive Off.....	1-145
Technical Parameters.....	1-145
Electronic Payments .....	1-147
Store Information .....	1-148
Retail Pocket Office .....	1-149
Object Security Maintenance.....	1-151
<b>POS Setup.....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
POS Configuration.....	2-3
Copying a POS Configuration to Other Terminals.....	2-17
Checkout Bank Groups.....	2-17
Substore Definitions.....	2-23
Menusys Import .....	2-25
POS Parameters.....	2-29
Card Program .....	2-29
Member Card & Promotions .....	2-32
Trading Stamps .....	2-33
Coupon Parameters.....	2-35
Restricted Sales Options .....	2-41
POS Receipt Setup.....	2-42
POS Receipt Setup.....	2-42

Receipt Logo.....	2-42
Receipt Header Footer .....	2-45
Retailer Information 1-5 .....	2-47
Organize Receipt.....	2-48
POS Keyboards.....	2-48
Keyboard Functions.....	2-48
Keyboard Programming.....	2-50
POS Menus .....	2-58
POS Sales Menu .....	2-58
POS Closed Menu .....	2-60
POS Supervisor Menu.....	2-60
POS Graphics.....	2-60
<b>Front Office Parameters .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
End of Day Parameters .....	3-3
End of Day Exceptional Dates.....	3-3
Automatic End Of Day Parameters.....	3-5
End of Day Report Parameters.....	3-6
PCs in System .....	3-9
Adding a New PC to the System .....	3-10
CDV Schemes .....	3-11
<b>Preferences.....</b>	<b>4-1</b>
Customizing Application .....	4-3
Changing System Colors.....	4-3
<b>Menu Builder and Menu Editor.....</b>	<b>1</b>
Menu Builder.....	5-3
Adding, Editing and Deleting a User.....	5-4
Adding and Deleting a Menu .....	5-7
Linking Users to Menus .....	5-9
Profile Maintenance .....	5-10
Menu Editor .....	5-13
About Security .....	5-13
Editing a Menu.....	5-14
Translating Menu Text.....	5-18

<b>Language Utilities .....</b>	<b>1</b>
System Language.....	6-3
Adding a System Language.....	6-3
Changing the System Language .....	6-5
About Translating.....	6-5
Translating Strings.....	6-6
Translate Messages .....	6-8
Translating Menu Names.....	6-10
Translate Control Names.....	6-12
Translate Report Strings.....	6-14
Change String.....	6-16
<b>Technical Support .....</b>	<b>7-1</b>
Master File Create .....	7-3
Store Open Service .....	7-3
Clearing the System's Transaction Data .....	7-4
Transaction Handling Parameters .....	7-5
Software Key Information .....	7-6
QuickDex Definition .....	7-7
Define QuickDex Files .....	7-7
Define QuickDex General Parameters .....	7-13
System Integrity .....	7-14
System Integrity Parameters .....	7-14
QDX Files Checksum Table .....	7-18
Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS .....	7-20
Terminate a Crashed End of Day .....	7-22
Technical Parameters.....	7-22
SQL Maintenance (Sqlmnt) .....	7-24
Rsession Parameters .....	7-31
Code Distribution Management Parameters.....	7-32
Package Maintenance .....	7-35
<b>Utilities &amp; System Alerts.....</b>	<b>8-1</b>
Electronic Journal .....	8-4

LAN Monitoring.....	8-4
System Alerts Overview.....	8-9
Accessing the System Alerts Menu .....	8-10
Alerts Log.....	8-11
Searching for Specific Alerts.....	8-12
Alerts Log Window.....	8-14
Sorting the Alerts Log List.....	8-16
Alerts Maintenance .....	8-16
Predefined Alerts .....	8-19
Defining Alert Specifications .....	8-23
Adding a New Alert.....	8-25
Deleting an Alert.....	8-26
Alert Severity Levels.....	8-26
Alerts Parameters.....	8-28
Alerts Recipient.....	8-29
Adding a New Alerts Recipient .....	8-30
Editing Alerts Recipients.....	8-34
Specifying Which Recipients Receive an Alert .....	8-35
Linking Profiles to Alerts .....	8-36
Date & Time.....	8-37
CCMS Log .....	8-38
Audit Queries.....	8-39
Accounting Date .....	8-43
Table Extracts.....	8-44
Table Extract Maintenance.....	8-45
Adding a New Table Extract .....	8-47
Deleting a Table Extract .....	8-49
<b>User Access Log .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
User Access Log Utility.....	9-3
Selecting Menu Entries for Tracking.....	9-3
User Access Log Queries .....	9-5



# 1

---

## System Parameter Tree

*This chapter provides an overview of the System Parameter tree, its structure, how to search for parameters and the various parameter types in the system.*

*Additionally, explanations for most of the Cash Office parameters and POST parameters are provided.*

### *In this chapter:*

**Overview, page 1-3**

**Using the System Parameter Tree, page 1-3**

**System Parameter Explanations, page 1-19**

**Cash Office Parameters, page 1-19**

**POST Parameters, page 1-26**

**Front Office Parameters, page 1-112**

**POS Units and Measures Parameters, page 1-141**

**Programmable Barcodes, page 1-143**

**Fuel Parameters, page 1-144**

**Technical Parameters, page 1-145**

**Store Information Parameters, page 1-148**

**Retail Pocket Office Parameters, page 1-149**

**Object Security Maintenance, page 1-151**



## Overview

The *System Parameter Tree* comprises most of the system parameters of the *ISS45* application. The parameters are categorized in such a way that provides easy access to each parameter.

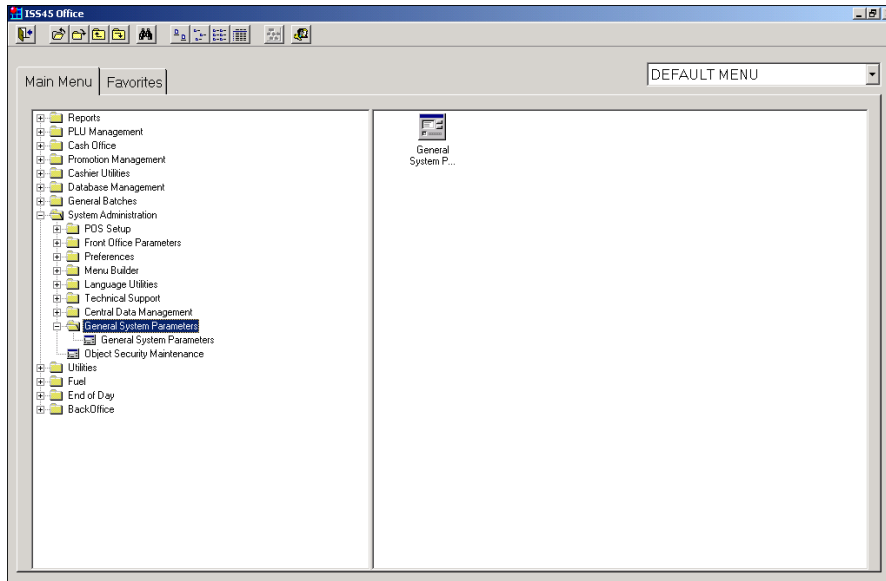
The various parameter types are described in this chapter, and illustrated by examples. Additionally, a description of the *Enable* feature is provided.

For explanations on the remaining parameters that are not included in the *System Parameter Tree*, refer to the *POS Configuration* and *Front Office Configuration* chapters in this Guide.

## Using the System Parameter Tree

The toolbar functionality is the same as in the entire *ISS45* application. (For further information on toolbar functionality refer to the *QuickStart Reference*.)

- **To access the System Parameter Tree**
  - 1 From the *Main Menu* tab, select the *System Administration* folder, and then the *General System Parameters* folder. The *General System Parameters* window is displayed.

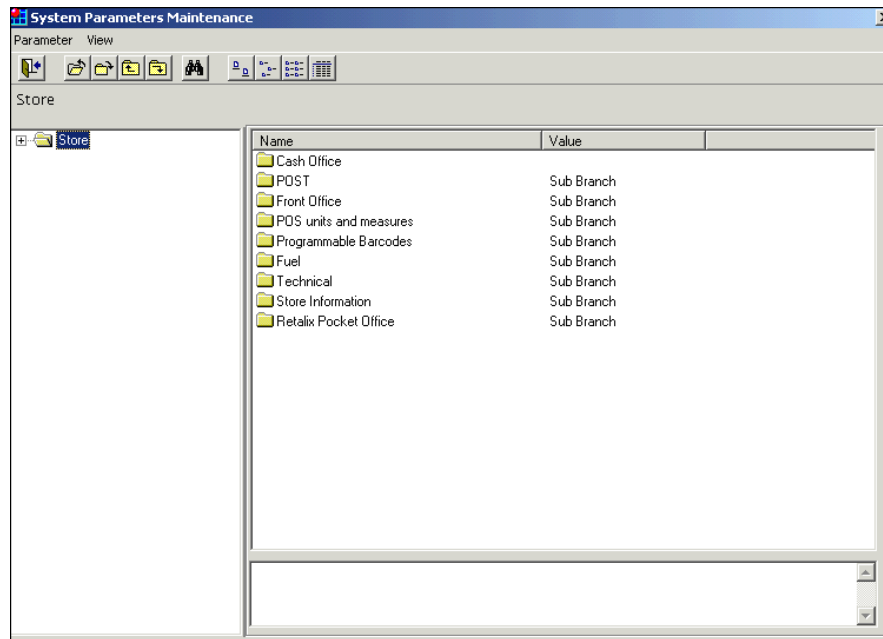


- 2 Double-click General System Parameters to display the System Parameter Maintenance window.

**Note:**

Wait for the System Parameters to load; this process may take a few moments.

- 3 Double-click the *Store* folder. The various categories in the *System Parameter Tree* are displayed as follows:




Locating a particular parameter can be performed either by using the *Search* tool, or by using the Tree Hierarchy, as explained below.


## Locating Parameters

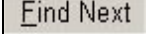
Locating a parameter in the *System Parameter Tree* can be done by searching for the name of the required parameter, or its approximate location. Opening the relevant folders and sub-folders, will eventually lead you to the required parameter.

At any level in the *System Parameter Tree* you may search using

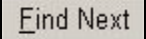
the *Search* button , and by entering the full parameter's name, or one or more words included in the name.

### ➤ To search for a parameter

- 1 From the Toolbar click  to display the *Lookup* dialog.
- 2 Enter the name of the required parameter, or one word of it.

- 3 Click  to display the required parameter.
- 4 Click *Cancel* if the required parameter has been located.

**Or**

Click  to resume the search.

## Setting and Updating Parameters

Once you have located the required parameter, you can proceed with the update.

➤ **To access a parameter**

Double-click the relevant line of the parameter.

**Or**

Highlight the relevant line and select *Enter*. The *System Parameter Maintenance* window is displayed (See screen above).

## The *Enable* Feature

The objective of the *Enable* feature is to control authorization of users to change parameter settings. Only a system administrator can define a user as authorized to revise a specific parameter. This is done by activating the *Enable* feature.

An administrator can use one of the following two ways to define a parameter as *Enabled* or *Disabled* for a user.

➤ **To define a parameter as Enabled**

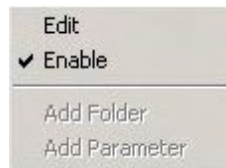
**Note:**

This can be performed only by administrative personnel.

Once the required parameter's screen is displayed, select the Enable checkbox, and then click *Apply*.

**Or**

Right-click the parameter's icon in the Tree, then select *Enable* from the pop-up menu, as follows:



When the *Enable* feature is switched on for a particular parameter for a specific user, the user who is logged-on can see the parameter in the *System Parameter Tree*, and is able to display the parameter's dialog. In this case the *Enable* checkbox is checked, though appears gray, as displayed below, and the user may revise the settings for this parameter.



When the *Enable* feature is disabled for a particular parameter, this means that the user is not authorized to change this parameter, thus it cannot be viewed by this user in the *System Parameter Tree*.

## Parameter Types

There are several categories of parameters, each of which require different types of data to be entered or selected. The following are examples of all the parameter types in the system:

- Yes/No Parameters
- Tiny Integer Parameters
- Small Integer Parameters
- Long Integer Parameters (Integer)
- Float Parameters
- Free-Text (String) Parameters
- Range for Single Value Parameters
- Single Date Parameters
- Single Time Parameters
- Tax Reversal Parameters
- Path String Parameters
- Rounding Parameters
- End of Month Parameters
- Points Redemption Parameters
- IP Address Parameters
- Currency Parameters
- Check-Box Options Parameters
- List Parameters
- Multi-Line Parameters

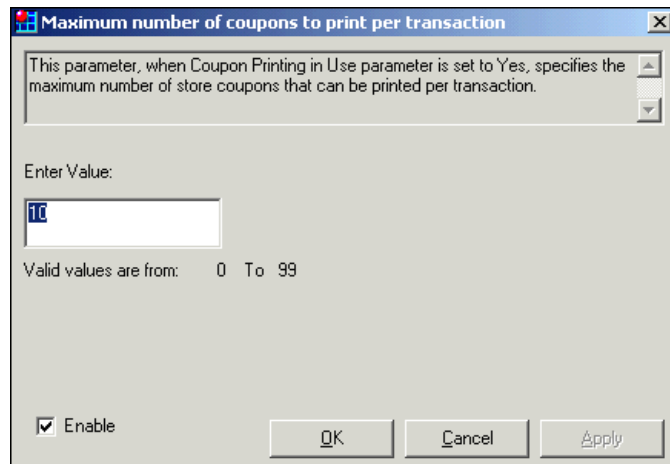
## Yes/No Parameters

This parameter type presents the user with a Yes/No option.



## Tiny Integer Parameters

This parameter type comprises a range of numeric values between 0 – 255. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.



## Small Integer Parameters

This parameter type comprises a range of numeric values between 0 – 32,767. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.

## Long Integer Parameters (Integer)

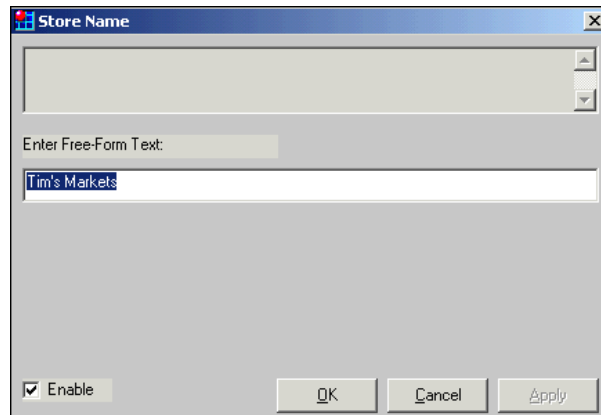
This parameter type comprises a wide range of numeric values between 0 – 2,147,483,641. Entering a value outside of the given range will display an error message.

## Float Parameters

This parameter type is similar to the Integer parameter type, but comprises a range of numeric values that have decimals points.

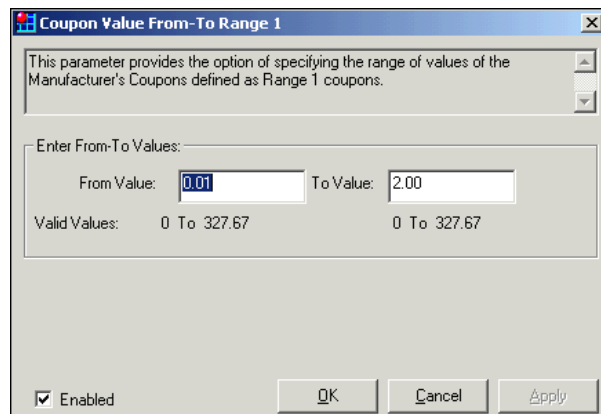
## Free-Text (String) Parameters

This parameter type includes a field for entering free-text, enabling the user to enter up to 255 characters.




## Range for Single Value Parameters

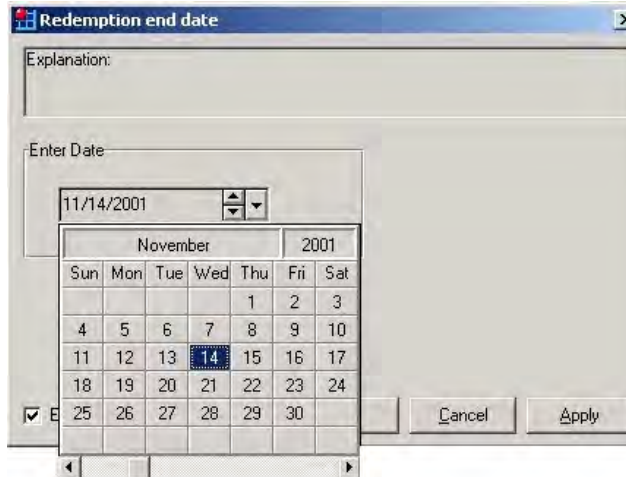
This parameter type comprises a range of a low and a high value, each of which is selected from a separate range.




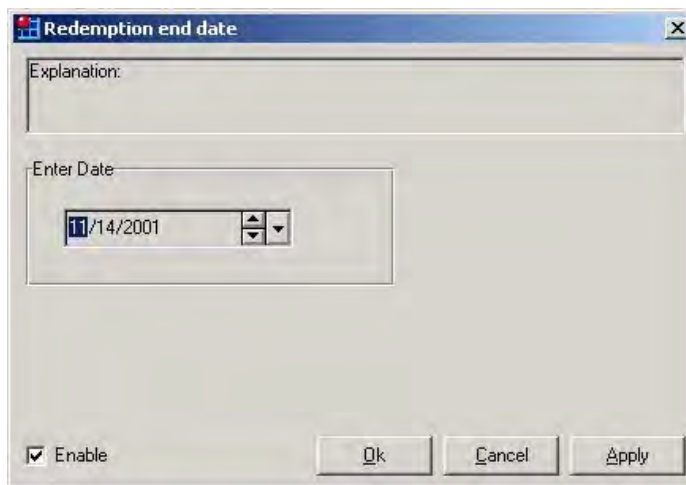
## Single Date Parameters

This parameter type presents the user with the option of selecting a date from the calendar.

This can be done by clicking the arrow button  to display a drop-down calendar, and then selecting the required day.

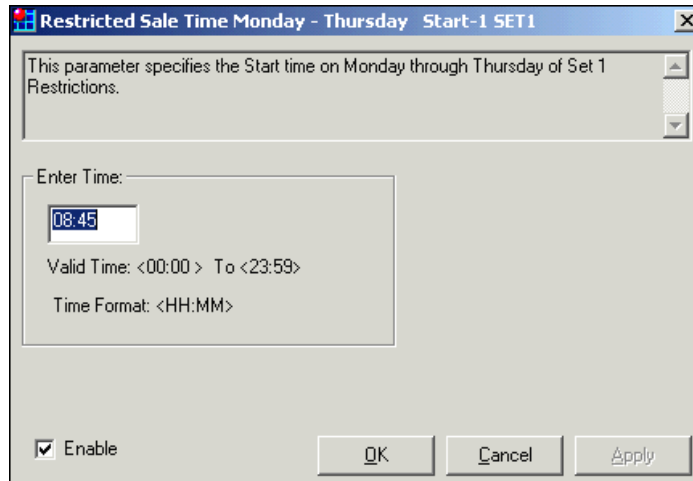


Alternatively, you can place the cursor on the month, day or year in the *Enter Date* field and then use the up/down arrows  to display the required date.



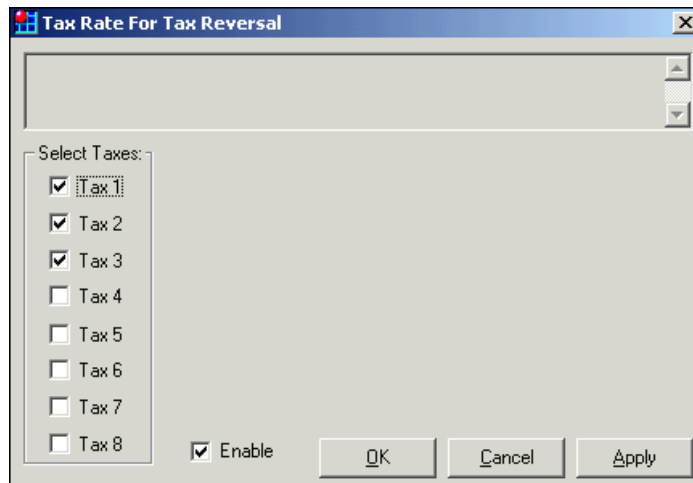
## Single Time Parameters

This parameter type enables the user to enter a single time.



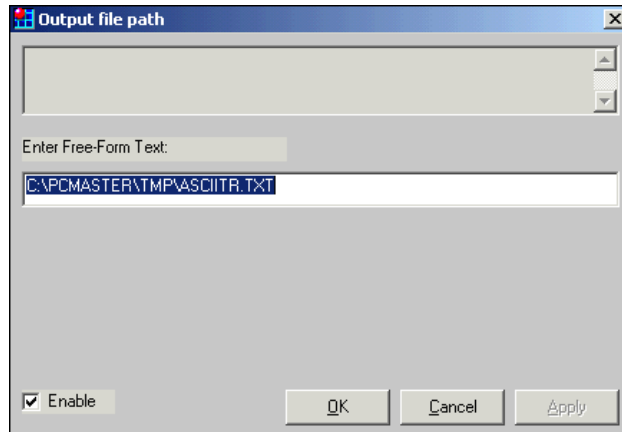
## Tax Reversal Parameters

This is a multi-parameter, in which the user can select one, some, all or none of the relevant tax types.



## Path String Parameters

This parameter type enables the user to enter a path to an existing location.



## Rounding Parameters

This is a multi-parameter in which the user can specify the value to which each of the 10 suffixes will be rounded.



## End of Month Parameters

This is a multi-parameter in which the user specifies the day in each month, on which the *End of Month* procedure will be performed. The default date is the last calendar date of each month.

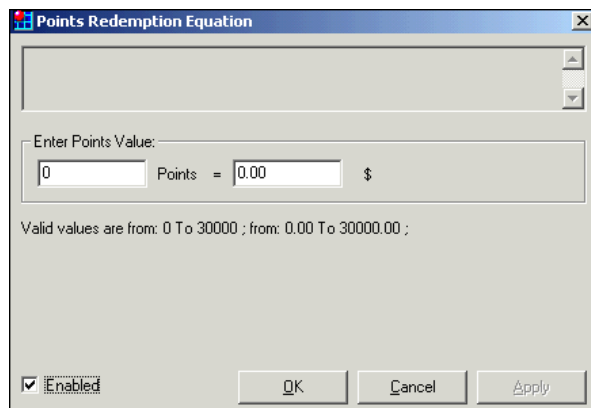


The 'End Of Month Definitions' dialog box features an 'Explanation' text area at the top. Below it is a section titled 'Define 'End of Month' Date:' containing a 3x3 grid of month and date pairs. Each pair consists of a text label and a numeric input field. The values are: January: 31, May: 31, September: 30; February: 28, June: 30, October: 31; March: 31, July: 31, November: 30; April: 30, August: 31, December: 31. At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled 'Enable'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

Month	End of Month Date
January	31
February	28
March	31
April	30
May	31
June	30
July	31
August	31
September	30
October	31
November	30
December	31

## Points Redemption Parameters

This parameter type enables the user to enter the conversion rate from Points into local currency.



The 'Points Redemption Equation' dialog box has a large empty text area at the top. Below it is a section titled 'Enter Points Value:' containing two input fields. The first field contains '0' and is followed by the text 'Points ='. The second field contains '0.00' and is followed by a dollar sign '\$'. Below this section, there is a line of text: 'Valid values are from: 0 To 30000 ; from: 0.00 To 30000.00 ;'. At the bottom left, there is a checked checkbox labeled 'Enabled'. At the bottom right, there are three buttons: 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

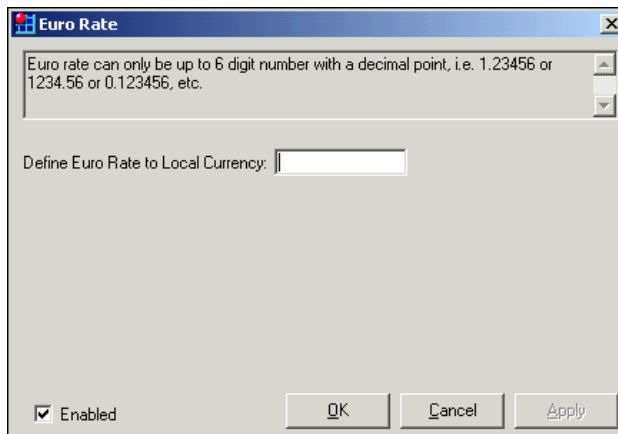
## IP Address Parameters

This parameter type comprises 4 separate fields, each of which may be defined between 0-255.



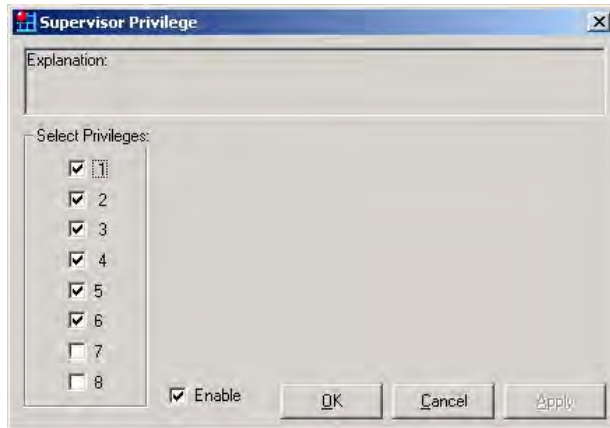
## Currency Parameters

This parameter type enables a user to enter the conversion rate between the Euro and local currency.



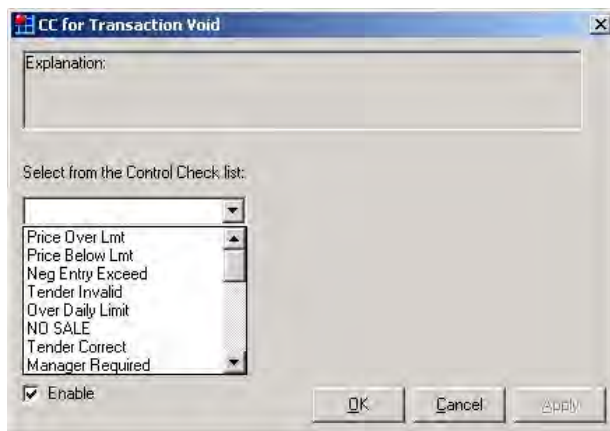
## Check-Box Options Parameters

This is a multi-parameter enabling the user to select several checkboxes; this parameter is used for selecting Tax Types, Supervisor Privileges, Days of the Week, etc.



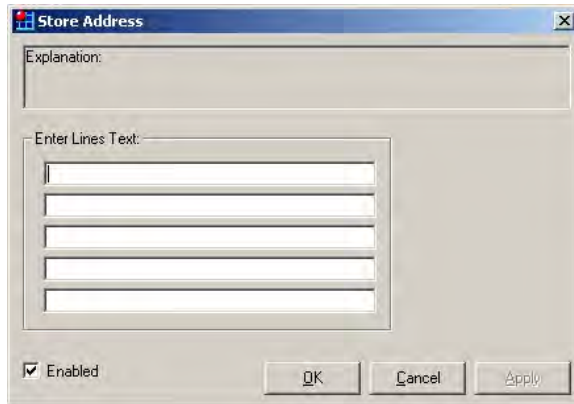
## List Parameters

This parameter type comprises a drop-down list, of which the user may select one of the options, such as Tenders, Control Checks, Departments or Club-Cards.



## Multi-Line Parameters

This parameter type comprises several lines, enabling the user to enter specific text in each line.



# System Parameter Explanations

## Cash Office Parameters

### Cashier Balancing Period Parameters

**Ask Lock Cashier/POS Before Locking:** This parameter provides the option of displaying a message before Cashier/POS Locking, confirming that this POST will be locked. The message will be displayed at the Office computer.

**Allow Delayed Cashier/POST Balancing:** This parameter provides the option of allowing the system to operate using Delayed Cashier/POST Balancing. The Delayed Cashier /POST Balancing options enables cashiers/POST to retain balances for two shifts (current and previous).

**Transfer Period on End of Week (Default is every day):** This parameter indicates when to transfer a period. Selecting No transfers the period every day. This selection is overridden by the day/s specified in the Do Not Transfer Period on Particular Day parameter. Selecting Yes transfers the period at EOW.

### Do Not Transfer Period (sub-folder)

**Do not Transfer Period on Particular Day:** This parameter provides the option to select the days on which the transferring of a period will not occur. It is optional to select more than one day. Using this parameter is possible only when the Transfer Period on End of Week parameter is set on No.

### POS Accountability Parameters

**POS Accountability in System:** Selecting Yes will set the system to operate on POS Accountability. Selecting No will set the system to operate on Cashier Accountability.

## Print Report After

**Cashier/POS Add Loan:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Add/Loan Report, after performing Cashier/POS Add/Loan.

**Cashier/POS Pickup:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Pickup Report, after performing Cashier/POS Pickup.

**Cashier/POS Declaration:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Cashier/POS Declaration Report, after performing Cashier/POS Declaration.

**Bank Deposit:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Bank Deposit Report, after performing a Bank Deposit.

**Bank Receipt:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Bank Receipt Report, after performing a Bank Receipt.

**Payout:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Payout Report, after performing a Payout.

**ROA (Received on Account):** This parameter defines the printing options for the ROA Report, after performing an ROA.

**Safe Declaration:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Safe Declaration Report, after performing a Safe Declaration.

**Safe Locking:** This parameter defines the printing options for the Safe Report, after performing a Safe Lock.

## Function Parameters

### Cashier/POS Locking Parameters

**Print Reports for all Cashiers/POSTS, Active and Non-Active:**  
This parameter enables the user to print reports for all

Cashiers/POSTs (active and non-active), rather than the default of print only those that were active during the locking period.

**Perform Locking on all Cashiers/POSTs:** This parameter allows all Cashiers/POSTs to be locked simultaneously. This option may be useful in stores where there are a large number of Cashiers or POSTs.

**Maximum Over/Short Percentage to Allow Locking:** This parameter indicates the maximum Over/Short percentage of the Cashier's Declaration allowed in order to perform Cashier/POS Locking.

**Auto Cashier Lock at End of Day:** This parameter provides the option of automatically locking cashiers during the End of Day process.

**Automatic Locking for Cashier on POS Accountability**

**System:** Set this parameter if POS Accountability is in use and Cashier Locking should be performed at EOD.

**Keep Data After Cashier/POS Locking (Do not Erase):** This parameter provides the option of keeping the cashier/POS data after their till has been locked. When set to Yes, the SHIFT\_EMP\_MEDIA and SHIFT\_EMP\_MEDIA tables will not be erased.

## Reports to Print During Locking (sub-folder)

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Declaration Report:**

This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Declaration Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Operator/POS Trial Balance**

**Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Operator/POS Trial Balance Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Operator/POS Summary Balance**

**Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically

printing the Operator/POS Summary Balance Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier/POS Accountability Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Accountability Report, after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Pickup & Loan Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Pickup & Loan Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

**Cashier/POS Locking: Print Cashier Cash Report:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the Cashier/POS Tender Report after performing Cashier/POS Locking.

## Cashier/POS Declaration Parameters

**Update Safe Totals Immediately After Cashier/POS Declaration:** This parameter specifies that once Cashier/POS Declaration is performed, the amount will be immediately reflected in the Safe Totals. When selecting No, the Declaration amount will only be reflected after Locking.

**Allow Cashier/POST Declaration in Current Period While Signed-On:** This parameter provides the option to perform Declarations while the Cashiers/POSTs are Signed-on.

**Allow Declarations for Cashiers/POSTs not Signed-On In Period:** This parameter provides the option to allow Cashiers/POSTs who are not Signed-on to perform a Declaration.

**Allow Manual Editing of Tenders Marked as Auto Declaration:** This parameter provides the option to allow

performing Manual Editing of Tenders defined as 'Auto-Declaration', as these are entered automatically.

**Do Not Show Over/Short Tab at Cashier/POS Declaration:**

This parameter provides the option of not displaying the Over/Short tab at Cashier Declaration. The objective is to prevent cashiers from viewing the expected Declaration amount.

**Enhanced Reports on POS /Cashier Declaration:** This parameter provides the option of automatically printing the following reports upon Cashier Declaration: Itemized Check Report by Cashier, Detailed Pickup & Loan Report, Cashier Tender Report and Declaration Report.

## Cashier/POS Pickup/Loan Parameters

**Allow Transactions (Pickups & Loans) After Cashier/POSTs**

**Locked:** This parameter provides the option of modifying a Pickup or Loan, after the Cashier/POS has been locked, to adjust the Cashier's Balancing. This would be used, for example, when Tender is found in the Cash Drawer after Cashier/POS Locking.

**Update Safe Totals Immediately After Cashier Function in**

**POST:** This parameter provides the option that when Cashier functions are performed at the POST, they will be reflected immediately in the Safe Totals.

**Automatic Pickup/Loan of Over/Short:** This parameter, used in 24-hour trading stores, enables Cashiers to remain Signed-on during EOD, thus their Accountable Balance is unchanged after EOD is completed. This parameter is enabled when the Automatic Locking During EOD parameter is selected.

**Omit Add Loan screen when Log-On as Supervisor/Store**

**Manager:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Add Loan pop-up screen will not be displayed when a Supervisor or Store manager has Signed-on at the POS terminal.

## Payout/ROA Parameters

**Enhanced Payout and Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of using multi-detailed templates for the various Payouts and Receipts, enabling you to work with the Enhanced Receipt and Payout Report. When set to Yes, Payouts and Receipts may only be performed at the Front Office, not at the POS terminal.

**Store Number CDV Scheme:** Setting this parameter to a value of "1" will invoke branch number validation when performing enhanced Payout and ROA transactions.

## Safe Parameters

Safe data can be linked to a user-specified accounting date rather than a current working date. This feature allows the store to perform cash office accounting procedures for the prior day (after the EOD and after the working date has been incremented)

**Multi Safe Mode:** This parameter enables multiple safes to be used in Safe functions and balancing.

**Allow Manually Changing the Accounting Date:** This parameter controls whether the Accounting Date can be manually updated. This is only allowed when the parameter "Finalizing Option for Custom Weekly Accounting Report" is set to "Manual" (see page 1-136).

**Accounting Date in System:** This parameter controls whether or not the Accounting Date is used in the system. If it is set to "Yes", then safe locking occurs after the Custom Weekly Accounting Report is finalized.

## Safe Locking Parameters

**Do Not Allow Locking if Unlocked Cashiers/POSTs Found:** This parameter provides the option to disallow Safe Locking, if there are still unlocked Cashiers or POSTs.

## Specify Copies to Print at Safe Locking (subfolder)

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Safe Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Safe Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Weekly Payouts Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Weekly Payouts Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Weekly ROA Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Weekly ROA Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Department Sales Analysis for Last Week:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Department Sales Analysis for Last Week that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Branch Expenses Summary Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Branch Expenses Summary Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Office Cash Balance Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Office Cash Balance Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Receipt Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Receipt Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

**Copies to Print at Safe Locking: Audit Report:** This parameter specifies the number of copies of the Audit Report that will be printed automatically at Safe Locking.

# POST Parameters

## Operational

These operational parameters relate to the POST.

**Enable Scroll Bar on POS:** This parameter helps simplify performing line item voids by enabling the Page Up and Page Down soft-key buttons (when the transaction includes more items than can be displayed on the cashier display). Set this parameter to Yes to enable the use of the Scroll Bar on the POS.

## Code Distribution & R Session

Code Distribution is a software application that automatically distributes and performs software upgrades to the POS terminals. Code Distribution enables POS terminals to upgrade automatically when in Sign-off mode. In Sign-on mode, system parameters provide options to enable seamless software upgrades without interfering with normal sales transactions.

An Rsession is a communication channel that supports communication between the MFS1 server, the MFS2 and each POS terminal. Defining Rsession parameters enables Code Distribution software upgrades and prevents overloads in MFS1.

**Max. No. of Tills to Upgrade Simultaneously:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of POS terminals to upgrade simultaneously. For example, if the store has 20 POS terminals, they may elect to upgrade only 10 POS terminals simultaneously. A maximum of 30 POS terminals can be upgraded simultaneously.

**Rsession Active Flag:** The Rsession Active Flag indicates whether an Rsession is being used on the system, controlling staggered upgrading of PoS Terminal.

**Rsession Communication Timeout:** Enter the number of seconds to indicate after how long the Rsession Communication will timeout.

**No. of Tickets Between Retries of Upgrade:** This parameter specifies the number of sales/transaction that can be concluded before Code Deploy tries to Upgrade the PoS terminal when in Sign-On mode.

**Max. No. of Seconds Between Retries of Upgrade:** This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) after which a cashier prompt message “Proceed with the software upgrade? Yes/No” will reappear and Code Deploy will retry the software upgrade.

**Max. No. of Seconds to Wait for User Confirmation:** This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) that Code Distribution will wait for cashier confirmation before it automatically starts the upgrade.

**Activation Date:** This parameter provides the option of scheduling the date on which a package will be registered and administered in the store (Trading Date, System Date or Next Working Date). The options have different implications. For further details, refer to the Code Distribution Administration System guide.

**POS Operation System Configuration:** This parameter specifies the type of operating system of the POS terminals within the store configuration. CDS will validate packages content according to this parameter. Options include Only WinPOS, Only LinPOS or WinPOS or LinPOS.

## Control Checks

Control Checks alert authorized store personnel to various conditions or events that may occur at the POS terminal. When control checks are triggered, they display a message at the POS terminal and require a form of response. Various response types can be set up which may allow cashiers to continue, or force them to call a supervisor (for example, ‘Ask Yes/No’, ‘Continue’, ‘Warning’, ‘Supervisor Key-lock’ or ‘Inhibit Action’).

These Control Check parameters allow you to select which POS conditions or events need to be monitored and controlled.

**Bypass Control Check if Conditions Met:** This parameter provides the option for a cashier to bypass the Control Check, thus it will not be displayed if all necessary conditions are met. These conditions include cashier's privilege and key-lock position.

## Sale (sub-folder)

**CC for Prohibits Quantity Items:** Enter the Control Check to issue when the Prohibit Quantity\Repeat setting has been violated in sales mode for an item.

**CC when Price verify amount is below retail price:** When "Price Verify" flag is set to "On" for the item, setting this control check will determine if the checker will receive a control check when changing the price of the item to a lower price.

**CC when Price verify amount is above retail price:** When "Price Verify" flag is set to "On" for the item, setting this control check will determine if the checker will receive a control check when changing the price of the item to a higher price.

**Scanning Quantity Limit:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of times an item may be scanned before prompting a Control Check.

**CC for Offline Supervisor Request:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check to display if the POS terminal is off-line, and a supervisor is required to authorize some kind of transaction.

**CC for Exceeding Qty Limit at Scanning:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to exceed maximum quantity of one type of item allowed to be scanned. This is performed by pressing the Multiply function #42, then indicating the required amount, and then scanning the item once.

**CC for Keying Weighed Items (No Scale):** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to key-in weighed items, in order to sell an item when the scale is out of order.

**CC for No-Sale Within a Transaction:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform a No-Sale within a Transaction, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer using the No-Sale function #908.

**CC for No-Sale Outside a Transaction:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform a No-Sale, i.e., opening the Cash Drawer outside a Transaction.

**CC for Price Override:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to sell an item at a different price than what appears in the PLU file. This is performed using the Price Override function #930.

## Cancel/Void/Return (sub-folder)

“Cancel” removes the last item before completing the ticket.

“Void Transaction “ removes a transaction. “Subtract” removes an item before completing the ticket.

**CC for Exceeding Cancel/Subtract Limit:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the maximum voided sum allowed for one ticket. The Control Check will be displayed when pressing the Total key.

**Cancel/Subtract Limit Amount:** This parameter specifies the maximum sum that can be voided from a ticket, before prompting a Control Check.

**CC for Transaction Void:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when using the Void Transaction function, i.e., voiding the entire ticket.

**CC for Subtract Next During Item Registration:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check

required when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item, during a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed immediately when attempting to use the Subtract function #902.

**CC for Item Cancel During Item Registration:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Item Cancel during a transaction.

**CC for Subtract Next/Item Cancel After Completion:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Subtract Next, i.e., voiding an item after a transaction. This Control Check will be displayed after the Subtract Next function has been performed.

**CC for Return Transactions, After Completion:** This parameter provides the option to select the Control Check required when performing a Return Transaction #905, i.e., refunding a transaction. The Control Check will be displayed once the Cash Drawer is opened in a Return Transaction.

**CC for Points Adjustment:** Enter the Control Check to issue when a customer point accumulation adjustment is made.

**Max Amount of a Single Item Void:** Enter the currency amount of a single item void that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Total Item Voids:** Enter the currency amount of all item voids within a transaction that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Single Item Cancel:** Enter the currency amount of a single item cancel that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Total Item Cancels:** Enter the currency amount of all item cancels within a transaction that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of a Single Item Return:** Enter the currency amount of a single item return that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Total Item Returns:** Enter the currency amount of all item returns within a transaction that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Single Bottle Return:** Enter the currency amount of a single bottle return that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**Max Amount of Total Bottle Returns:** Enter the currency amount of all bottle returns within a transaction that, if exceeded, will generate a control check.

**CC for Limit of a Single Item Void:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of a single item void has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of Total Item Voids:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of all item voids within a transaction has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of Single Item Cancel:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of a single item cancel has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of Total Item Cancels:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of all item cancels within a transaction has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of a Single Item Return:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of a single item return has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of Total Item Returns:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of all item returns within a transaction has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of a Single Bottle Returns:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of a single bottle return has been exceeded.

**CC for Limit of a Total Bottle Returns:** Select the Control Check to issue when the limit of all bottle returns within a transaction has been exceeded.

## Order (sub-folder)

**Max Total of Negative in Order:** This parameter specifies the Maximum Negative amount allowed in a ticket.

**CC for Max Total of Negative in Order:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Negative amount allowed in a ticket. This Control Check is displayed after pressing the Total key.

**Max Negative Percent of the Order:** This parameter specifies the Maximum Percentage of a Negative sum in the total ticket allowed in a transaction.

**CC for Max Negative Percent of the Order:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Negative Total Percentage allowed per ticket.

**CC for Exceeding Max Amount in Negative Transactions:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the Maximum Amount of Negative Transactions, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.

**Max Amount for Negative Transactions:** This parameter specifies the Maximum Amount allowed for Negative Transactions in a ticket, i.e., the amount owed to the customer.

## Save/Recall (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to three separate functions: Save, Recall (can be performed from any POST), and Save/Recall.

**CC for Saving Transactions with Partial Tender:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to perform Save Transaction on a transaction for which some payment was accepted.

**CC for Save/Recall Ticket in Off-Line Mode:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing a Save/Recall transaction.

**CC for Save Ticket:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Save on a ticket.

**CC for Recall Ticket:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Recall on a ticket.

**CC for Log-Off When Un-Recalled Tickets Found:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when performing Log-Off when Un-Recalled ticket is found.

## Tender (sub-folder)

**CC for Credit Card Tender that Exceeds Eligible Amount:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when exceeding the maximum charge amount allowed in Credit Card Tender.

**CC for Off-Line Bad Account Request:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to accept tender when POST is in Off-line without performing a Bad-Account Check. This Control Check is related to the flag 'Check Bad Account' in Tender Maintenance.

**CC for Off-Line ECCA Request:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to accept ECCA-regulated tender when in Off-line, thus impossible to perform an ECCA Check. The ECCA utility stores customer account data and monitors the use of these accounts.

**CC for Offline Voice Authorization:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when choosing the voice authorization option.

## Printing (sub-folder)

**CC for Printer Paper Low: Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when a message is displayed at the POST notifying of low paper in the receipt printer. This parameter is relevant only to printers with this capability.

**CC for Pressing Item Cancel During Template/Slip Print:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when Item Cancel is pressed while a check or a receipt are being printed.

**CC for Bypass Check Printing:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to cancel printing on the front of the check. When paying with a check the system is set to print on the front and back of the check.

**CC for Bypass Check Endorsement:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to cancel the printing of the check endorsement in the back of the check, i.e., store details.

**CC for Bypass Tender Template Printing:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to bypass Tender Template printing.

**CC for Printer Paper Low: Audit:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when printer paper for audit (receipt copies) is low; relevant only in POSTs with Audit-Printing capability.

**CC to Print Voucher on Duplicate Receipt:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to reprint a voucher that results from a credit program. This parameter relates to the function Print Last Transaction, e.g., if slip was ripped, jammed or additional copy is requested.

## Customer (sub-folder)

**CC for Customer Account Off-Line:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to authorize a transaction when in Off-line mode, i.e., Cashier is unable to check Customer Account.

**CC for Customer Account Not On File:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction in which the Customer Account was not found, e.g., when customer is a new customer and their account does not exist.

**CC for Customer Account Insufficient Funds:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction in which the Customer has exceeded their Customer Account limit.

**CC to Restrict Redemption of Customer Accounts Out of Sale:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to allow a customer to withdraw funds from their Customer Account outside of a sale.

## Cashier (sub-folder)

**CC to Bypass Cashier Not Found During Off-Line Sign-On:** This Control Check monitors authorized personnel to bypass the message displayed when a cashier Signs-on in Off-line mode; this message indicates the Cashier name is not found on POST Cashier file.

**CC for Offline Notification on Sign Off:** This Control Check helps prevent situations where a POS is left in off-line mode when EOD runs (so the terminal doesn't hold transactions that should be posted for the current EOD). Select the control check to issue to notify the cashier if the POS is offline during the sign off process.

## Restricted Sale

**CC for Aborting Birthday Validation:** If this Control Check is set and the cashier selects "No" or "Clear" when prompted for

Age verification, the Control Check will display and its assigned action must be performed. This new feature will discourage the cashier from aborting the “Please Enter Customer Birthday” prompt and giving the restricted item away.

## Drawer

**Cash in Drawer Limit for “Over Limit Cashier’s Report”:** This parameter indicates the maximum amount allowed in the Cash Drawer. Once exceeded, the Dollar icon is displayed on the Cashier’s Display. A list of Cashiers who have exceeded this amount appears in the Over Limit Cashier’s Report.

**Open Drawer on Tender Purchase:** This parameter provides the option to prompt the opening of the Cash Drawer when performing a Tender Purchase, i.e., giving cash in exchange for a Paycheck or when swiping a Debit card.

**Open Drawer in Training Mode:** This parameter provides the option to prompt the opening of the Cash Drawer when in Training Mode.

**Open Drawer on End of Day:** This parameter provides the option to open all Cash Drawers at EOD.

**Open Drawer Timeout:** This parameter specifies the number of seconds that the Cash Drawer has been open and no key has been pressed, after which a beeping sound is prompted. Pressing any key before the timeout will prompt a beeping sound and display a ‘Close Drawer’ message.

**Food Stamps in Drawer Limit:** This parameter indicates the maximum total sum of Food Stamps allowed in the Cash Drawer, which once exceeded the Food Stamps icon is displayed on the Cashier’s Display.

**Beep for Cash in Drawer Limit:** This parameter provides the option to allow the POST to beep 10 times when the predefined cash in drawer limit has been exceeded. This audible beep will be in addition to the Dollar icon that is displayed on the Cashier’s Display.

**Open Drawer following a Transfer:** This parameter will enable the cash drawer to open after a media “transfer in” has been accepted.

## Keyboard

**Enter Key as UPC Key:** This parameter provides the option of using the Enter key to perform the UPC function (UPC=Universal Price Code), i.e., searching for a PLU number including the check digit.

**Use Enter Key as Total:** This parameter provides the option of using the Enter key to perform the Total function.

**PLU/UPC/Enter Repeat Key in Use:** This parameter provides the option of automatically adding the last item that was rung up again by using the PLU/UPC/Enter function. This function is used at POSTs with a minimal number of keys on the keyboard.

**Department Repeat Key in Use:** This parameter provides the option of automatically adding the last Department Sale that was entered. This function is used at POSTs with a minimal number of keys on the keyboard.

## Scanning

**Force Department Price Entry of Unknown Items:** When selecting Yes, the cashier is prompted to enter Department Name and Price. When selecting No the message Item Not Found is displayed along with the scanned item number. This parameter relates to a separate parameter Print PLU Not Found Slip.

**Do not Allow Sales in Tender Mode:** This parameter provides the option of disallowing a cashier to perform a sale in Tender mode (i.e., prohibit sales once a tender key is pressed).

**Disallow Quantity with Scanning:** Selecting Yes entails that when scanning several items of the same type a cashier must

scan each item individually. Selecting No enables the cashier to use the Multiply function, then enter the required number of items, and then scan the item.

**Maximum Number of Digits for Department Value:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits including decimal places for a Department Value price (also called Department Sale.), i.e., a price determined at the time of sale.

**Maximum Number of Digits for Media Value:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits including decimal places that can be entered as Tender Value.

**MSU Rounding Option:** This parameter indicates the rounding method of Multi Sale Units when items are sold separately. Selecting 34 33 33 defines that if three items are sold for \$1.00 the first item is sold for 34¢, and the second and third items are each sold for 33¢.

**PLU Includes Check Digits (for POS):** This parameter provides the option of specifying that when an item's PLU number is keyed-in manually, a Check Digit will be added to it by the POST, thus the lookup in the Item file will include the Check Digit.

**Maximum digits allowed at manual price prompt:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum number of digits that can be keyed at a manual price prompt.

## Member Card

### Member Card (sub-folder)

**Prompt for member card at start of ticket:** This parameter enables the card member request at the beginning of a transaction.

**Mask Member Card:** This parameter provides the option of masking the member card on the receipt, customer and cashier display, following the rules set in Card Maintenance.

**Member Card in System:** This parameter enables the member card feature in the system.

## Check Digit (sub-folder)

**Member Card Number Includes Check Digit:** This parameter provides the option of including a Check Digit in the Member Card number.

**Key-in Member Card Number Without Check Digit:** If the parameter, *Member Card Number includes Check Digit (above)*, is selected, this parameter provides the option of specifying that a Check Digit is automatically added when Keying-in a Member Card number. When set to Yes, the cashier can key-in Member Card numbers without check digits.

**Member Card Check Digit Formula:** This parameter enables you to select the formula by which the Check Digit will be determined. Options are Account or UPC.

**Member Card Number Must Used at POS Must Have a Valid EAN Check Digit:** This parameter provides the option of validating the EAN (European Article Numbering) Check Digit on Member Cards.

## Operation (sub-folder)

**Allow Scanning of Member Card During a Transaction:** This parameter provides the option of allowing cashiers to scan a member card during a transaction without having to first press the preset Member Card key. To enable this feature, the Member Card range must be defined in Card Range Maintenance, as one

of the first five ranges. (Refer to *Chapter 2, POS Setup* for details).

**Automatically Accept Combined Card as Tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that once a Member Card is swiped at the beginning of the ticket, a message will be displayed at the end of the ticket, asking whether the customer wishes to use this card as Tender.

**Prompt for Member Card When Total Key is Pressed:** This parameter prompts a Cashier to request a Member Card when Total key is pressed.

**Member Card Prompt:** This parameter provides the option to define the text that appears on the Cashier's screen, prompting the Cashier to request a Loyalty Card. The prompt may include up to 20 alphanumeric characters.

**Search Member Card Locally:** This parameter provides the option to check the local file for member card information before checking loyalty host.

**Reprocess Ticket at Late Swipe:** This parameter applies to tickets where the member card is swiped in the middle of the ticket. If set to 'Yes', promotions for all the items are recalculated as if the member card was swiped at the beginning of the order.

**Non-delayed member card entry:** Enable this parameter to prohibit the member card to be entered after the start of the transaction.

**Exclude Members from Minimum Purchase:** If set to "Yes" and the promotion flag "Member Card Required" is false (unchecked), the minimum purchase amount will not be enforced if the order qualifies for the promotion.

## Corema (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to Corema, a Data-Warehouse application that stores Loyalty Cards data and with which POSTs communicate regarding Loyalty accounts. The objectives of

Loyalty programs are to increase sales and maintain data on consumer purchases.

**Length of Secondary ID Number (CCMS only):** This parameter specifies the maximum number of digits (0 to 99) allowed for a secondary ID number, an additional unique ID number required, for example, when a customer misplaces their Member Card. The Secondary ID number may be a telephone number or date of birth.

**Display Member Name from Corema:** This parameter specifies that after a PAN (PAN=Personal Account Number) is sent to Corema and data is received for the specified customer, the customer's name will be displayed.

**Corema for Message 3 Not Only for Member Card:** This parameter specifies that Message 3 data is sent even when member card was not presented. Message 3 comprises a summary of actions sent by the POST to Corema regarding the customer.

## Member Card Name (sub-folder)

**Member Card Name in System:** This parameter provides the option to enter the name of the Member Card as it appears in the system. The card name may include up to 12 alphanumeric characters.

**Display Member Description on Customer Display:** This parameter provides the option to display the Member Card Name on the Customer Display once the card is swiped or scanned.

**Display Member Description on Cashier Display:** This parameter provides the option to display the Member Card Name on the Cashier Display, once the card is swiped or scanned; it will then be printed on the customer receipt.

## Member Name (sub-folder)

**Display Member Name on Customer Display:** This parameter provides the option to display the name of the Member Card holder on the Customer Display once the card has been swiped and the member name is retrieved either from the loyalty host or a local loyalty file.

**Display Member Name on Cashier Display:** This parameter will allow the member name to be displayed on the cashier display once the member card has been swiped and the member name is retrieved either from the loyalty host or a local loyalty file.

**Print Member Name on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option to print the name of the Member Card holder on the customer receipt.

## Redemption (sub-folder)

**Redemption End Date:** The parameter defines the redemption end date. This is the last date on which the customer can redeem the award. (Reserved for future development.)

**Pending Redemption Start Date:** This parameter defines the pending redemption start date. This is the next (pending) redemption start date. (Reserved for future development.)

**Redemption Tender:** This parameter specifies the tender for loyalty card point redemption discounts dollar amounts.

**Redemption Option:** This parameter displays the options for customer point redemption. When redeeming customer points, the system can be configured to either redeem ALL points or a partial amount.

**Qualified Spend Option:** This parameter defines the customer receipt print option for point redemption. Options are:

- None

- Print QF for Member Card Customer Only,
- Print QF on all Receipts
- As Option 1 + Member Card Points Message
- As Option 2 + Member Card Points Message
- Print only TOTAL POINTS (TFS)

**Point Redemption Equation:** The parameter determines the points redemption value, based on the formula, XX Points = Y.YY Value (\$). Points (XX) must be less than or equal to 30,000 and Value (\$Y.YY) must be less than or equal to \$30,000.

## POST User Hooks

User Hooks, also called Custom Links, are user-definable applications that can be activated by the POST before or after certain POST functions. Selecting Yes for a particular Hook specifies that the POST can activate this Hook.

**User Hooks in System:** This parameter specifies that one or more User Hooks are enabled at the POST.

**Debug Mode While in User Hooks:** This parameter provides the option of entering Debug Mode when User Hooks are enabled.

**Initialization Hook:** This parameter specifies that this Hook will be activated during the Initialization of the POST.

**Before No-Sale Operation:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated just before the start of the next transaction, i.e., after the drawer is closed following the previous operation, for example, Sale Transaction, Pickup, Sign-on, etc.

**At End of Transaction:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated at the end of each Sales Transaction, before printing the Trailer message and before sending the Transaction to the Host.

**Before Sign-On, Sign-Off, Secure or Wait Mode:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed before Sign-on, Sign-off, Secure mode and Start/Start Wait mode.

**After Total Key is Pressed:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated immediately after the Subtotal key is pressed but before any operation is executed.

**After Total Key and Order Promotion Calculation:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is activated after pressing the Total key and the balance due is adjusted according to Order Promotion.

**Before PLU Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after entering or scanning an item but before the item information is read from the item file.

**After PLU Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way.

**After PLU Sale Completed:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Item Transaction is completed.

**Before Department Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after entering a department but before the department information is read from the Item file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.

**After Department Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the item information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Department Sale execution is continued or terminated.

**After Department Completion:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Department Sale is completed.

**Before Discount Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the discount but before the discount information is read from the discount file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.

**After Discount Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the discount information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook

will determine if the Discount execution is continued or terminated.

**After Discount Completion:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Discount is completed.

**Before Return Read Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the return but before the return information is read from the returned file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

**After Return Read Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the return information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Return execution is continued or terminated.

**Before Tender Read Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after selecting the tender but before the tender information is read from the Tender file. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is continued or terminated.

**After Tender Read Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Tender information is read but before the information is processed in any way. The return from the Hook will determine if the Tender execution is continued or terminated.

**After Tender Completion Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after tendering is completed.

**After Frequent Shopper Entry Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after the Frequent Shopper entry but before it is validated. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or re-enter the Frequent Shopper entry.

**Before “Check Signature” Prompt Hook:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before the Check Signature prompt. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue or terminate the Tender execution.

**User Hook Functions Hook:** This parameter enables the Hook that executes the various User Hook functions. The Hook function must first be added into the keyboard layout or into the POST menu. Using a Hook function will result in execution of this Hook with the Hook function number.

**Before BROM Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before promotion information is read from the database.

**After BROM Read:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just after promotion information is read from the database.

**After BROM Reduction Completion:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed after Reduction is completed. Only Reductions have an after Completion Hook because Promotions and Offers are executed as a special PLU sale, therefore, the PLU After Completion Hook covers this purpose.

**Before Maintenance Execution:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just before every maintenance execution. The return from the Hook will determine whether to continue execution of this maintenance (OK/BAD).

**After Maintenance Execution:** This parameter specifies that the Hook is executed just after every maintenance execution.

## **Restricted Sale\Birthday Sale\Time Restriction**

These parameters define restrictions on sales of items or on sales encompassing entire departments. The restrictions may apply to customer age, day of week or time of day.

**Validate Cashier Age for Age Restricted Items:** This parameter provides the option of validating the cashier's age prior to selling age restricted items.

**Allow Delayed Age Verification in System:** This parameter provides the option of delaying cashier age verification to tender time, rather than at restricted item scan time.

**Restricted Sale/Birthday Feature in Use:** This parameter provides the option to activate the Restricted Sale/Birthday feature in the store. A restricted sale item means the item can only be purchased at a particular time of day (e.g., beer, wine). A birthday validation means the item can only be purchased by an individual who meets the minimum age requirement.

**Prompt to Accept Birthday:** This parameter provides the option to prompt the cashier to enter the customer's birthday on restricted sales items. When set to Yes, the cashier will be prompted to enter the customer's birth date (mmddyy) on the first item purchased from the associated Restriction Layout. The system will automatically calculate the date to determine if it satisfies the minimum age requirement. If the birth date was retrieved through Biometric Identification, this parameter will be ignored and the cashier will not be prompted to accept the birth date.

**CC for Bypassing Birthday Prompt:** This parameter specifies the Control Check to display if the cashier does not enter a birth date for birthday validation.

**Birthday Validation Print Option:** This parameter specifies whether the birth date is printed on the customer receipt, or audit tape or both.

## Restriction Layout 1 (sub-folder)

These parameters define restriction for Layout 1, and include minimum age requirement, days of week, time of day and Control Checks for these restrictions. This layout may be linked to items or departments. (The system supports up to 10 Restriction Layouts with Layout 1 explained below.)

**Department Number 1:** This parameter specifies the department to which restrictions apply, as defined in Layout 1.

**Set Number 1-3:** This parameter defines a set of Day and Time restrictions that apply to this layout.

**CC Restricted Sale 1:** This parameter specifies the Control Check that is prompted when a Cashier attempts to sell an item from the specified department and within the restricted days and times defined for this layout.

**Age Required 1:** This parameter specifies the minimum age requirement for purchasing items defined in Layout 1.

**CC Birthday Val 1:** This parameter specifies the Control Check that is displayed when the birth date that is entered shows an age below the minimum age requirement.

**Description 1:** This parameter provides the option to define the name of the Restriction Layout. This description appears on the Restriction Layout dropdown list in PLU Maintenance.

**Cashier Age Validation 1:** This parameter defines the age requirement for the cashier to sale items or departments linked to Restricted Sale Layout 1.

**CC Cashier Age Validation 1:** This parameter defines the control check issued when a cashier is under the age required to sale items/department.

## Restricted Sale – Time Set 1 (sub-folder)

These parameters define the day(s) of the week and the start/stop times to apply the restricted sale layouts (parameters), defined above. The times entered should reflect the actual timeframes that the purchases are allowed. The times must be entered in a 24-hour format (i.e., noon = 12:00 and midnight = 24:00). The system will support up to 3 Restricted Sale Time Sets (Day and Time restrictions) with Time Set 1 explained below.

**Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Start - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first Start time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Stop - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first End time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Start - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Monday – Thursday Stop - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Monday through Thursday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Friday Start - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first Start time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Friday Stop - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first End time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Friday Start - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Friday Stop - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Friday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Saturday Start - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first Start time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Saturday Stop - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first End time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Saturday - Start - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Saturday Stop - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Saturday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Sunday Start - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first Start time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Sunday Stop - 1 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the first End time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Sunday Start - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second Start time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Sunday Stop - 2 Set 1:** This parameter specifies the optional second End time on Sunday of Set 1 Restrictions.

**Restricted Sale Time Set Days Set 1:** This parameter specifies the days of the week for which Restricted Sales Time Set 1 is in effect.

## Secure\Sign-Off\Sign-On

These parameters are related to various requirements and actions at the POST when Signing-on and Signing-off.

The Sign On/Off parameters enable you to define the functions related to cashier sign on or sign off, for example, whether the cashier must enter a password when they sign on. The Secure parameters enable you to define the period of time, during which the cashier has not used the keyboard, which may elapse before secure mode will be automatically activated. In addition, you can define other functions that will occur when secure mode is entered automatically.

**Password Required at Sign-On:** This parameter provides the option of requiring the entering of a password when Signing-on at the POST.

**Change Password Allowed at Sign-On:** This parameter provides the option of prompting the cashier at Sign-on to change password. The Cashier can bypass the password change by pressing *Enter*.

**Automatic Open Drawer at Sign-On:** This parameter provides the option of automatic opening of the Cash Drawer when Signing-On.

**Password Allowed at Sign-Off:** This parameter provides the option of prompting the cashier at Sign-off to change password. The Cashier can bypass the password change by pressing *Enter*.

**Automatic Open Drawer at Sign-Off:** This parameter provides the option of automatically opening the Cash Drawer when Signing-Off.

**Password Required at Sign-Off:** This parameter provides the option of requiring the entering of a password when Signing-off.

**Delay (In Seconds) For Open Drawer Alarm After Sign-Off:** This parameter indicates how long, in seconds, after the Cash Drawer has been open, an alarm will go off.

**Report Required At Sign-Off:** This parameter specifies what is printed on the receipt when a Cashier is Signing-off. Options are:

- No report printed: No report is generated.
- Print X-Read on receipt: A Cashier X-Read receipt will print as part of the sign-off process. A X-Read receipt details the types, number, total values and the tender types of transactions the cashier performed. It also displays the number and total values of transactions made by each tender.
- Print Name & Number of Receipt: The receipt prints only the cashier's name and number.
- X-Read on Audit: A Cashier X-Read receipt (described above) will print on the audit receipt as part of the sign-off process (if Audit printer exists).
- Print Name & Number of Audit: The audit receipt displays only the cashier's name and number.

**Number of Minutes Before Automatic Secure Mode:** This parameter indicates the number of minutes when no key was pressed, after which the POST will be locked. The type of Locking method is defined in the *Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic Sign-Off* parameter, listed below.

**Automatic Secure Mode/Automatic Sign-Off:** This parameter provides the option of changing the POST to Secure mode or to Sign-off when no key is pressed for a predefined number of minutes as defined in *Number of Minutes Before Automatic Secure Mode* parameter.

**Password Required With Cashier Bar-Code:** This parameter provides the option for a Cashier when Signing-on to scan a Cashier's card with a unique Bar-code.

**Number of Days for Password Change:** This parameter provides the option of indicating the number of days since the last POST Sign-on password was changed, after which a message will be displayed prompting for password change. When selecting Yes, the new password must differ from the old password. (Note: The parameter *Change password allowed at Sign-on* must be set to Yes.)

**Omit Manual Secure Mode Prompt:** This parameter provides the option to omit the Secure Mode Yes/No prompt when manually securing the POS terminal.

**Enable the Scanner in Sign-Off Mode:** This parameter provides the option to enable the scanner to read a bar-code label in sign-off mode. It is recommended to select this parameter in stores that use scannable cashier/manager cards for signing-on/off POS terminals.

**Password required at No Sale:** This parameter provides the option of requiring the entering of a password when a No Sale function is performed.

## System Integrity

This is the procedure of comparing total EOD sums in the Office QDX files with EOD sums in the POST QDX files. When discrepancies are located the POST refreshes, i.e., reloads from the server, and POST files are adjusted. These parameters define how the System Integrity option must perform.

**Number of Days to Prompt before Checksum:** This parameter is reserved for future development.

**System Integrity in System:** This parameter provides the option to enable the System Integrity feature (during EOD) in the system.

**Delay after File Load (Other than PLU) was Suspended (Seconds):** This parameter specifies the number of seconds of delay after the file load (for files other than PLU) has been suspended before it will try to continue its load.

## Data Refresh – Foreground Fast PLU Load (sub-folder)

### Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt

**Required:** This parameter provides the option to issue a cashier prompt prior to initiating a PLU Fast Foreground Load. A *foreground* load will automatically occur if the Keyboard is not touched for 'n' seconds. A *foreground* load is fast, *background* is slow.

### Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Protection (Zip):

This parameter provides the option to zip the POS terminal's PLU file prior to starting a *fast block load*. This could take fifteen minutes on 130,000 active PLUs. If loading fails, the zipped file will be reused again.

### Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt

**Frequency (Tickets):** This parameter specifies how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in *tickets* (sales transactions). The available range is 0 to 99.

### Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground Load Prompt

**Frequency (Seconds):** This parameter specifies how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in *seconds*.

## Slow \ Fast PLU Load (sub-folder)

### **Data FAST/SLOW Foreground PLU Load Threshold**

**Percentage %:** This parameter specifies a required percentage threshold, that if exceeded, a fast block load is initiated. The POS terminal checks active records and compares with the MFS. If a difference of 'n' percentage is found, the PLU file is zipped and a fast block load starts.

If a cashier is logged on, a prompt (see parameter, *Data Refresh-PLU FAST Foreground load prompt*, above) recommends to the cashier to perform a fast block load. You can allow the cashier to override this prompt.

If the checksum fails, and the difference is less than the percentage you specify, the system will use the slow (foreground) load, and then switch between foreground and background depending on keyboard activity. If the difference is greater than the specified percentage, the fast load will be used

### **Data SLOW – PLU Foreground/Background Switch Delay**

**(Seconds):** Enter the number of seconds of keyboard activity and inactivity, before a file load switches from foreground to background (and vice versa).

**Bypass PLU FAST Foreground Message – if Keyboard not Touched (Seconds):** This parameter specifies the number of seconds of keyboard inactivity, after which the prompt begins to display again.

## WIC

These parameters relate to WIC (Women, Infants, Children). WIC checks can be used only by women with children and are considered a type of Tender. A customer must declare their intention to pay with WIC checks before the first item is entered.

**Note:**

These parameters do not apply to EBT WIC processing. (See EBT WIC below).

**WIC Prompt Options:** This parameter provides the option of selecting additional data that the cashier will be prompted to enter when starting a WIC transaction.

**WIC Print Options:** This parameter provides the option of specifying which WIC-related data will be printed on the receipt.

**CC for Exceeding WIC Check Amount:** This Control Check is prompted at the time of sale when the total transaction amount is higher than the WIC check amount declared at the beginning of the transaction.

**CC for Exceeding WIC Expiry Date:** This Control Check is prompted when the date of the WIC check has expired.

**CC for Bypassing WIC Check Amount:** This Control Check enables authorized personnel to bypass the message that is displayed indicating that the WIC check amount must be entered.

**CC for Bypassing WIC Expiry Date:** This Control Check enables authorized personnel to bypass the message that is displayed indicating that the WIC Check date must be entered.

**WIC Issue Date:** This parameter specifies the method of validating a WIC check, either by Issue Date or Expiry Date. When selecting Issue Date the Validity period must be specified in WIC Validity Period parameter.

**WIC Validity Period (In Days):** This parameter specifies the number of days for which the WIC check is valid. This parameter takes effect only when selecting Issue Date in the WIC Issue Date parameter.

**Allow WIC Tender Without Validation:** This parameter enables authorized personnel to accept WIC Checks as ordinary Tender without any validation procedures. When Yes is selected, all the above WIC-related parameters are nullified.

**Maximum Number of WIC Items to Print on Back of Check:**

This parameter specifies the maximum number of purchased WIC items to print on the back of a WIC check.

**WIC Date Type:** This parameter specifies the WIC Check dates required to be entered by the cashier: Issue Date, Expiry Date or Both.

## EBT WIC (sub-folder)

ISS45 now EBT WIC cards with embedded “smart-chips”. More states are moving toward this solution to replace traditional WIC vouchers. The EFT Pin Pad reads benefit information from the card and updates (writes) data to the card as to which WIC items have purchased. If an EBT WIC card is on a state “hot list” (i.e. card lost, stolen, counterfeited, etc.), the card can be locked by the Pin Pad device.

Mixed-basket transactions (that include EBT WIC and non-EBT WIC items) are also supported in this release.

**Note:**

As of this release, EBT WIC Cards are not supported on Self-Checkout Lanes (or in any **non-MTXEPS** interface environment).

**Store Address Line 1:** This parameter defines the first line of Address information for the store.

**Store Address Line 2:** This parameter defines the second line of Address information for the store.

**Store City:** This parameter defines the city where the store is located.

**Store State:** This parameter defines the state where the store is located. The FIPS Code for the state will be stored.

**Note:**

The FIPS Code is a two-digit numeric Federal Information Processing Standard (FIPS) code that uniquely identifies a state, territory or commonwealth.

**Store ZIP:** This parameter defines the zip code for the store address. ##### or #####-#### are acceptable entries.

**Display Eligible Benefits Only:** When this parameter is set to Yes and **EBT WIC in System** is set to Yes, only items (with available benefit units) that the WIC customer can redeem will be displayed on the receipt.

**EBT WIC in System:** When this parameter is set to Yes, EBT WIC functionality will be enabled in the system. This is used in conjunction with HASP programming.

**EBT WIC Tender Number:** When **EBT WIC in System** is set to Yes and this parameter is set to a valid tender, the selected tender will be used as the EBT WIC tender.

**CC for Allowing Mixed Basket:** Based on the settings of the Control Check in this parameter, when EBT WIC tender is selected to tender a mixed basket the Control Check will restrict updating the benefits on the EBT WIC card before additional tender has been verified.

## Card Program

Card Programs are community fundraising projects in which the store participates. The customer selects a preferred fundraising project, to which, for each transaction the store may donate a certain amount/percentage of the purchase sum.

The Card Program numbering sequence that appears on the card has a format that enables the system to determine the type of card, the specific program (that is, the particular charity the card is for) and the customer number.

4 7 3 3 4 6 2 1 8 3 5 4 6

UPC barcode — Program no. Customer no.

The UPC barcode is always 4, which denotes that it is a card, not a PLU item. The total number of digits comprising the card number is always 12 or 13.

**Card Program (Community Partner) Y/N:** This parameter provides the option to activate the card program feature in the store.

**UPC Barcode:** This parameter specifies the first two digits in a UPC of a Community Partner program barcode.

**Location of Program in Card:** This parameter specifies the location of the selected program's code within the code that appears on the card.

## FSA

The following parameters are related to Flexible Spending Account (FSA) cards. The POS is able to accept these health-care debit account cards as a tender, separate prescription co-pay amounts from the other health-care qualified purchases and report them as separate totals to the EFT payment system.

**Enable Healthcare Item Substantiation:** When this parameter is set to Yes, FSA card processing is enabled.

**Template name for FSA Totals:** This parameter defines the template used to print Non-Rx, Rx and FSA totals on the receipt. If blank, these totals will not be printed.

**Template name for FSA Disclaimer:** This parameter defines the template used to print an FSA disclaimer (on a separate slip) when an FSA tender is used in the ticket. If blank, this additional slip will not print.

## Monetary

### Charge Posting

These parameters relate to charging, i.e., when the store allows a customer to defer payment.

## General (sub-folder)

**In House Account Type:** This parameter specifies the store's charging method. Charge Posting specifies a beginning sum from which customer purchases are deducted (i.e., a credit account in which the shopper establishes a credit balance). Customer Account defines customer purchases as cumulative, from 0 until the maximum predefined sum (i.e., a debit account, the outstanding balance of which is paid by the customer on a monthly basis).

**Number of Digits for Account Number:** This parameter enables the specifying of the maximum number of digits defined for an Account Number. Upon validation any different number of digits will prompt an error message.

**Check Tender Daily Limits on Amount:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum amount allowed for a customer to charge per day.

**Check Tender Daily Limits on Account:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum number of charges allowed for a customer per day.

**No Check Digit on Account Number:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Customer Account does not include a Check Digit.

**Check for Secondary ID Number in Bad Accounts:** Set this parameter to "Yes" to prompt the cashier at the POS to enter a Secondary ID number for Bad Accounts.

## Related Account Number (sub-folder)

**Log Related Account in Transaction File:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that in transactions that include a customer charge, the POST automatically logs the account number into the Transaction file.

**Print Related Account on Receipt:** This parameter specifies that in transactions that include a customer charge, the customer account number will be printed on the receipt.

**Related Account Template:** This parameter defines the name of the template that will be printed when selecting Yes in the *Print Related Account on Receipt* parameter. (**Note:** The print template name must be written in capital letters and must be identical to the name on the template file, to ensure that the text is displayed on the POS terminal and printed on the receipt.)

## Tender (sub-folder)

**Charge Payment Tender:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender Type for Customer Charge accounts as it will appear on the receipt and track in the reports.

**Reversal Charge Payment Tender:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender Type for reversing transactions that have been processed on Customer Charge accounts.

## Coupons

UPC5 coupons are manufacturer's coupons in which the first 5 digits are the Manufacturer's number, the following 3 digits comprise the Family Code, and the last digits are the Price Code.

**Level of Smart TV Coupon:** This parameter defines the necessary Validation level when purchasing item with a Smart TV coupon. Validation levels include: None; Validating the 5-digit Manufacturer number; Validating the 3-digit family number, or the first digit of the family number.

**Level of UPC5 Validation:** This parameter defines the necessary Validation level when an item is purchased with a UPC5 coupon. Validation types include: None; Validating the 5-

digit Manufacturer number; Validating the 3-digit family number, or the first digit of the family number.

## Bonus Coupon (sub-folder)

An extra value coupon offered by a store. The calculation of a Bonus Coupon is based on a Manufacturer's Coupon (vendor coupon) that receives an extra added value. The combined value of a Manufacturer's Coupon with the Bonus Coupon may not exceed the value of the item.

### Range 1 (sub-folder):

The system supports up to 4 different ranges for Bonus Coupons (Range 1-4). Each range supports the following parameters (with Range 1 explained below).

**Coupon Multiplier Range1:** This parameter specifies the number by which the vendor coupon is multiplied. For example, if vendor coupons should be doubled, enter 2.

**Add Amount Range 1:** This parameter provides the option of adding an additional bonus amount, above and beyond the 'ceiling amount'.

**Minimum Order Range 1:** This parameter specifies the minimum purchase required (Order Total) for a Bonus Value to apply.

**Tender Range 1:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Tender type defined for this coupon, as it will appear on the receipt and in the reports.

**Ceiling Amount Range 1:** This parameter specifies the maximum value allowed when combining the value of the Manufacturer's Coupon with the value of the Bonus Coupon.

**Days of Week Range 1:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the day(s) of the week on which the Bonus Coupon Range will apply.

**Coupon Value From-To Range 1:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the range of the minimum and maximum Manufacturer's Coupon values, defined as Range 1 coupons.

## General (sub-folder)

**Give Bonus Coupon on Discountable items only:** This parameter provides the option of issuing bonus coupons only on items that are defined as discountable in the PLU Maintenance parameters. This is possible only when the Prohibit Discount flag in the PLU record is not checked. (Note: If this parameter is set to No, bonus coupons apply to any item.)

**Allow Coupons in Departments With No Sales In Order:** This parameter provides the option of accepting vendor coupons in a specific department even though no items from that department were purchased in the order. The first department credited with the coupon will be the default department for additional vendor coupons processed with no associated items purchased.

**No Keyboard Sound for Coupons Without Department or Price:** This parameter specifies that when processing a coupon, for which no price or department are defined, a message is displayed informing that a price or department must be entered. This message will not be accompanied by a keyboard sound (beep). When this parameter is set to No, the message displayed will be accompanied by a beeping sound from the keyboard.

**Force Zeros on Coupon Number:** This parameter provides the option to force zeros on the coupon number. If you want to force zeros on coupons, specify the number of digits in this parameter. (This parameter is currently not supported)

**CC To Allow Coupons To Bring Subtotal < 0:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to allow a negative subtotal of a ticket when the value of coupons tendered exceeds the total of the balance due.

**CC To Allow More Coupons Than Item:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to allow a transaction, in which the number of coupons tendered exceeds the total number of items in the ticket.

**CC To Restrict Redemption of EAN 99 Coupons Out of Sale:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to redeem an EAN 99 coupon outside of an order, i.e., give customer cash in return for a coupon.

**CC To Allow Coupons as First Item In Order:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to give a customer money from the Cash Drawer in a Coupon Only Order, i.e., a ticket in which the first item is a coupon. (Note: If the first item in the ticket is coupon, only coupon entries are allowed in a transaction.)

**Maximum Coupon Face Value:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum value allowed for a coupon.

**Markdown Department for UPC5 Coupon:** This parameter specifies the department in which any differences between the coupon value and the scanned item's sum will be registered. (This parameter is relevant when the Level of UPC5 Validation parameter is set to None, i.e., UPC5 is not tender, but rather Order Promotion).

**No CDV Check on Item Scan/Enter Key:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the POST will not perform Check Digit Validation on scanned or keyed-in items.

**No UPC5 in System:** This parameter enables the option of defining UPC5 coupons in the system. Selecting No will define a UPC5 coupon as a regular item.

**Enable Double (Bonus) Coupon To:** This parameter provides the option of specifying who is eligible for Double Bonus Coupons. Options are:

- All
- Members
- Non-Members
- Disable All

**Enable Triple Coupon To:** This parameter provides the option of selecting who is eligible for Triple Bonus Coupons. Options are:

- All
- Members
- Non-Members
- Disable All

**Use UPC5 Coupon Attached Item Description:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that a description of the item that was purchased with a coupon will be printed on the receipt, when the coupon is processed. Selecting 'No' will print only the Tender type.

**Maximum of Triple Coupons Per Ticket:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the maximum number of Triple Coupons allowed per ticket.

**Minimum Amount for Minimum Purchase Control Check:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the minimum purchase amount required when using UPC5 coupons, below which the Control Check for Minimum Purchase is prompted.

**Smart Card Coupon In System:** This parameter provides the options of prompting for Smart Card Coupons: None, No Prompt Screen or Display Prompt Screen.

**PLU for Special PLU-Coupon Discount:** This parameter provides the option of allowing a percentage off the sales order total, via a PLU entry, using the vendor coupon logic, which does not reduce sales and tax. This parameter specifies the PLU number which will trigger the order discount. (**Note:** When creating the PLU number for this option, the PLU record should be setup as a vendor coupon.)

**Percentage for Special PLU Coupon Discount:** This parameter, in association with the parameter, *Percentage for Special Coupon Discount*, defines the percentage for the total order discount.

**EAN99 Coupon or UPC99 Vender Coupon in System:** This parameter provides the option of defining the type of coupons in

the system. UPC99 is the same as UPC5, but without Bonus Coupon capability.

**Disable Promotion Best Deal:** This parameter disables the recalculation of promotion discounts for UPC2 variable weight promotions.

**Maximum Coupons in Ticket:** This parameter defines the maximum number total combined coupon types that are allowed in a single order.

**CC for Maximum Coupons in Ticket:** This parameter specifies the Control Check to display when the maximum number of coupons in the sales order has been exceeded.

**Price Embedded Coupons in System:** This parameter enables “Price Embedded Coupon” functionality within the system. These are Store Coupons that can be redeemed against UPC2 items only.

**Prefix for Price Embedded Coupon:** This parameter identifies the unique prefix associated with price embedded coupon numbers.

**Price Embedded Coupon Display:** Enter the name to display when Price Embedded Coupons are used.

**Coupon Required Number to Trigger After Total (1-3):** This parameter provides the option to specify a coupon number (for example, coupon 9999999901171) in this field that will trigger a member promotion after the Total key is pressed. The coupon number can be linked to individual promotions (refer to *Office User’s Guide, Promotion Management*, for details).

**Do not display additional coupon info:** This parameter affects the information displayed when the parameter “Use Items Description for UPC5 Coupon Attachment” (above) is set to “No”. When this parameter is set to “Yes” the additional coupon information is not displayed.

## Printing (sub-folder)

**Print Coupons Report on Ticket:** This parameter provides the option of printing a coupon summary on the ticket that includes all coupons (store, vendor and bonus) that were printed for this ticket.

**Coupon Printing in Use:** This parameter enables the Coupon Printing feature. This option enables user to define and design store coupons to be printed for each customer transaction based on items in the order.

**Maximum Number of Coupons to Print Per Transaction:** When *Coupon Printing in Use* parameter is set to Yes, this parameter specifies the maximum number of coupons to print per sales transaction.

**Minimum Purchase Amount Required:** This parameter specifies the minimum transaction total required to initiate coupon printing.

**Control Check for Minimum Purchase:** This parameter specifies the Control Check to display when the transaction total is less than the predefined minimum purchase amount for generating a printed coupon.

**Fuel Coupon Barcode Prefix:** This parameter will set digits two and three of the system generated fuel barcode. The system algorithm will use this prefix with additional calculations to create a unique barcode printed in a target message (e.g., 0XX12345678 where XX = prefix).

## Accountability (sub-folder)

These parameters specify the Tender type of each coupon type as defined in Tender Maintenance.

**Tenders: Price Embedded Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Price Embedded Coupons.

**Tenders: Smart Card:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Smart Card Coupons.

**Tenders: EAN99 Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for EAN99 Coupons.

**Triple Tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Triple Coupons.

**Tenders: Vendor Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Vendor Coupons.

**Tenders: Store Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Store Coupons.

**Tenders: Bonus Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for Bonus Coupons.

**Tenders: UPC5 Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type that is defined for UPC5 Coupons.

## **Department Netted (sub-folder):**

These parameters specify whether the coupon sum is deducted from the total Department sales amount.

**Department Netted on Vendor Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Vendor Coupon sum be deducted from the total sales amount of the relevant department.

**Department Netted on Store Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Store Coupon sum be deducted when calculating the total sales amount of the relevant department.

**Department Netted on Bonus Coupon:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Bonus Coupon sum be deducted when calculating the total sales amount of the relevant department.

## Tax Forgive (sub-folder)

These parameters define whether taxes are charged on the entire sum of an item including on the coupon sum.

**Forgive Tax on Vendor Coupon:** This parameter enables to select the tax type that the customer will not be charged on the coupon sum when paying with a Vendor Coupon. If no taxes are selected the customer will be charged the usual tax.

**Forgive Tax on Store Coupon:** This parameter enables to select the type of tax that the customer will not be charged on the coupon sum, when paying with a Store Coupon. If no taxes are selected, the customer will be charged the usual tax.

**Forgive Tax on Bonus Coupon:** This parameter enables to select the type of tax that the customer will not be charged, when paying with a Bonus Coupon. If no taxes are selected, the customer will be charged the usual tax.

## Discount

These parameters relate to minimum purchase amount for receiving a discount. Discount is a function defined as a percentage of the price.

**Minimum Purchase Amount for Transaction Discount:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the minimum purchase amount that entitles a customer to a discount.

**Control Check for Not Meeting Minimum Purchase for Discount:** This parameter monitors authorized personnel to give a discount when the predefined minimum purchase amount is not met.

## Member Promotion

These Member Promotion Parameters enable you to define various requirements and descriptions for Member Promotions.

**Enhanced Promotion Description:** This parameter defines the enhanced promotion description, for example 'Express Savings'. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt.

**Total Enhanced Promotion Description:** This parameter is used to provide a description for the total enhanced promotion savings in a ticket. The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of the transaction.

**Total for Member Promotion Description:** This parameter is used to provide a description total savings the customer has received from member promotions. For example the total of all promotions will be described as "Total Member Savings." The description can be up to 20 alphanumeric characters and will be printed on the customer receipt at the end of the transaction.

**Report Member Promotions as Tender:** This parameter provides the option to track and report Member Promotions as a tender.

**Tender for Member Promotions:** This parameter provides the option to select the Tender Type for netted Member Promotions. If parameter *Report Member Promotions as Tender* is set to Yes, select the appropriate tender from the dropdown list.

**Member Promotion Affects Department Promotions:** This parameter provides the option to have member promotion discounts reduce department sales.

**Default Promotion on System Non-Netted Discount:** This parameter defines the default behavior of non-netted promotions. When set to Yes, promotional discounts will not reduce department sales. When set to No, promotional discounts will be subtracted from department sales. This default value will display on the screen when creating new promotions. When creating promotions, the user has the ability to override the default value.

**Default Frequent Shopper on System Non-Netted Discount:** This parameter defines how frequent shopper discounts will be

reported. When set to Yes, frequent shopper discounts will not reduce department sales. When set to No, frequent shopper discounts will be subtracted from department sales. The Non-netted amount will be tracked in the Department Report and the Expanded Department Report.

**Allow Zero Price Item to Trigger a Promotion:** This parameter provides the option to allow a zero-priced PLU item to trigger a customer promotion.

**Give only highest target message in target message level promotion:** For Level Promotion reward types of "Target Message", this parameter provides the option of issuing only the one message associated with the highest attained level.

**Tender for non-netted member promotions:** This parameter provides the option of choosing the tender type that will be used when deducting the promotion discount from net sales.

## Food Stamps

Food Stamps are considered as a tender type. Depending on state regulations, food stamps may have tax-exempt status. In addition, it may be against regulations to give change when payment is made with Food Stamps. These parameters define the functions that can be performed when Food Stamps are tendered.

**Food Stamps Tender:** This parameter provides the option of defining the Tender type linked with Food Stamps.

**Any Food Stamps Eligible Items Paid With Food Stamps is Tax Forgiven:** This Parameter provides the option of specifying that when purchasing items defined as Food Stamps Eligible Items (a PLU parameter) and when paying with Food Stamps, a customer will not be charged tax on the items.

**Any Food Stamps Tender Forgive Tax on All Food Stamps Eligible Items (NJ):** This parameter provides the option of specifying that no tax will be charged for Food Stamp Eligible Items when any portion of the transaction is tendered with Food

Stamps. (This law was first implemented in the state of New Jersey).

**Allow Non Whole-Dollar Food Stamps:** This parameter provides the option of accepting Food Stamps that have a non whole-dollar value, for example \$ 5.79.

**Allow Non Whole Dollar EBT Food Stamps:** This parameter provides the option of accepting Food Stamps in the form of EBT, a type of debit card used for Food Stamps that may have a non whole-dollar value, for example \$ 25.97. No change is issued on these transactions.

**Print Food Stamps Subtotal on Receipt if Food Stamps**

**Tendered:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Food Stamp Subtotal will print on the Receipt if Food Stamps are tendered.

**Limit Food Stamps Eligible to Balance Due:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the total value of Food Stamps that a customer uses in a ticket cannot exceed the total ticket balance.

**Forgive Tax on Vender Coupons if Food Stamps Tendered:**

This parameter provides the option of specifying that a customer will not be charged tax on vendor coupons for items purchased with Food Stamps.

**Display Food Stamps Total After Food Stamps Tender:** This parameter provides the option of displaying the amount tendered in Food Stamps on the customer display. When set to Yes, a food stamp sub-total (instead of the amount of Food Stamps tendered) will display on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered. When set to No, the amount paid in Food Stamps will display on the customer display, when Food Stamps are tendered.

**Limit Food Stamp Eligible to Balance Due:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the total value of Food Stamps that a customer uses in a ticket cannot exceed the total ticket balance.

**Forgive Tax on F/S Partial Tenders by Highest Tax Rate:**

When this parameter is set to Yes and the customer purchases items defined as Food Stamp Eligible and partial pays with Food Stamps, tax will be forgiven by the highest rate. Example: Item 100 and Item 200 both sell for \$10.00 and are food-stampable. Item 100 has a combined tax rate of 10%. Item 200 has a combined tax rate of 8%. If this new parameter is set to Yes and the transaction is partially tendered with \$10.00 of food stamps, tax will be forgiven on \$1.00 (10% of \$10.00) of the \$20.00 total.

**Note:**

To prevent cash change for purchases tendered with Food Stamps, both the "Limit Food Stamps Eligible to Balance Due" and "Forgive Tax on F/S Partial Tenders by Highest Tax Rate" parameters must be set to "Yes".

## Frequent Shopper

A Frequent Shopper program is a basic form of Loyalty Program comprising a limited number of options. The program operates by simply validating the number on the card and accordingly generating a reduced price.

**Frequent Shopper Description:** This parameter defines the name of the Frequent Shopper program.

**Do Not Prompt for Frequent Shopper at the Beginning of a Ticket:** This parameter provides the option to specify not to prompt for a Frequent Shopper card at the beginning of a ticket, thus the transaction will be registered as a normal transaction.

**Apply Frequent Shopper Discount Also With Any Manual Price Entries:** This parameter provides the option to specify that when manually entering item prices the Frequent Shopper Discount will be entered as well.

**Frequent Shopper Range: From To:** This parameter enables you to define the range of Frequent Shopper card numbers. Each card number can include up to 13 digits. Only card

numbers within the specified range will be recognized as Frequent Shopper cards by the system.

**Freq. Shopper Merchandising Template to Print at End of**

**Transaction:** This parameter identifies the merchandising template to print at the end of the sales transaction on the customer receipt.

**Use Frequent Shopper dummy card:** Enable this option if you would like to use a default frequent shopper card number for every order.

**Frequent Shopper dummy card number:** Enter the frequent shopper card number to insert into the ticket of all transactions.

**Allow Frequent Shopper Discount Higher than Item Price:**

This parameter provides the option of allowing Frequent Shoppers to receive a Discount value that is higher than the price of the item. If set to Yes, the shopper would get 'cash back', in addition to receiving the item for which they would not be charged. Usually this offer would be dependent on the shopper meeting a minimum purchase requirement.

**Use Frequent Shopper Number for Check Tender Account**

**Number:** This parameter specifies that the Customer's Frequent Shopper number will be used as the account number for processing checks. If a customer elects to pay by check, the account number does not have to be re-entered. If this parameter is set to No, the POS terminal will prompt for an account number when a check is tendered.

**Frequent Shopper Merchandising Feature:** This parameter defines the display format of Frequent Shopper discounted items on the printed receipt. Options are:

- None: No information will appear on the ticket next to each discounted item. The discounts will only be displayed as a subtotal at the end of the receipt.
- Character: A character, for example, an asterisk (\*), will appear next to each discounted item.
- Text Line: A text line will appear next to each discounted item.

- **Text Line & Savings:** A text line and the value of the discount will appear next to each discounted item, for example, 'You saved \$ 1.00'.

**Frequent Shopper Minimum Purchase Amount:** This parameter provides the option of specifying a minimum purchase amount required for Frequent Shoppers, to be eligible for Frequent Shopper discounts.

**Control Check for Not Meeting Minimum Purchase for Frequent Shopper:** This parameter enables an authorized person, for example, a supervisor, to give Frequent Shopper discounts, without the shopper having fulfilled the minimum purchase requirements.

**Control Check to Bypass Frequent Shopper:** This parameter enables authorized personnel to give Frequent Shopper discounts without a Frequent Shopper card number having been entered.

**Frequent Shopper Discount to Be Applied Per Item Price (MSU):** This parameter provides the option of specifying the method of calculating discounted Multiple Selling Unit (MSU) items if sold separately. When this parameter is set to Yes, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied per item, for MSU items. For example, if an MSU consists of two items for \$10, the single item price would be \$5. The Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the single item. Therefore, if the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the single item price is \$3.

When set to No, the Frequent Shopper discount is applied to the total MSU price of the combined items and then divided by the number of items to calculate the individual item's price. For example, if an MSU consist of two items for \$10, and the Frequent Shopper discount is \$2, the MSU would then be two items for \$8 and the single item price would be \$4.

**Use Frequent Shopper Number as Member Card Number:** This parameter provides the option of combining the features of a Frequent Shopper card with a Member card.

**Print Regular and Frequent Shopper Price:** This parameter provides the option of printing both the retail price and the frequent shopper (sale) price on the receipt.

**Automatic Insert in All Tickets:** This parameter provides the option to automatically insert the frequent shopper dummy card into every ticket.

## Frequent Shopper Mode (sub-folder)

**Frequent Shopper Type:** This parameter defines the type of Frequent Shopper program that is active in the system. Options are:

- None: No Frequent Shopper features are available.
- Regular: The Frequent Shopper card number must be entered (by swiping, scanning, or keying) at the start of the ticket in order for Frequent Shopper discounts to be given.
- Enhanced Type 1: The discount for eligible items is displayed only at the end of the ticket.
- Enhanced Type 2: The Frequent Shopper card number can be entered at any time during the order. However, the discount will only display at the end of the ticket. If the card number is entered at the beginning of the ticket, the ticket displays the discount for each eligible item.

## Cards

**Times to Swipe Card Before Manual Entry:** This parameter specifies the number of times a credit card is swiped but the POST fails to read the card number, after which the Cashier can enter the number manually.

**Seconds Before Credit Card Number Can Be Entered:** This parameter specifies the number of seconds once a credit card is swiped several times but the POST fails to read the card number, after which a message is displayed prompting the Cashier to enter the number manually.

**Suppress Fly Buys Check Digit on Receipt and Transaction:** Fly-Buy is a card that enables the customer to accrue flying mileage with each purchase. Mileage is earned based on purchase amount. This parameter provides the option to suppress printing of Check Digit on receipt and transaction.

**Key-In Fly Buys Number Without Check Digit:** This parameter provides the option of defining that the Fly-Buy card is keyed-in without a Check Digit.

**Offline credit tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type for offline credit tendering.

**Offline EBT tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type for offline EBT tendering.

## Cost Plus

Cost Plus is a method for determining the price of an item, as a function of the Cost and a predefined percentage of profit for the Store.

**Cost Plus in System:** This parameter provides the option to specify that Cost Plus is defined in the system.

**Cost Plus Taxable Surcharge Department:** This parameter provides the option to specify the department to which a taxable surcharge will be added.

**Cost Plus Non-Taxable Surcharge Department:** This parameter provides the option to specify the department to which a non-taxable surcharge will be added.

## Tender

**Allow Courtesy Card for Secondary ID without member card:** This parameter provides the option of allowing a secondary card type to be used when loyalty is not enabled in the system.

**Display EFT Payment Icon on Cashier Display:** When set to Yes, an EFT icon will be displayed on the cashier display when the customer has initiated any payment type on the EFT Pin Pad.

**ACH Tender:** Select the tender to be used for ACH (Automated Clearing House) transactions: Check or Payroll Check.

**Private Debit Tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type for a private debit card.

**Private Credit Tender:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the Tender type for a private credit card.

**Second Tender for Payouts Receipts:** This parameter specifies an (optional) second tender for receipts and payouts (other than cash).

**Allow Foreign Currency Change:** This parameter provides the option to allow foreign currency change to be given to a customer. For a transaction that has been over-tendered or partially tendered with one or more foreign currency tenders, the cashier has the option to give change in host currency (cash) or as any foreign currency in the transaction.

**Void Tender at Check Signature Allowed:** This parameter provides the option to void a tender during tendering with 'check signature'. When set to Yes, a tender can be voided when the 'check signature' prompt displays on the POS terminal. ('Check

Signature' displays if the appropriate parameter in the tender record is checked.) When parameter is set to No, the cashier is not allowed to void a tender during tendering with 'check signature'.

## Barcode Tender (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to Coinstar machines that take customers' coins and generate a bar-coded voucher for that amount, which can be used as tender.

**Barcode Tender Active:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that the Coinstar barcoded tender is an active tender in the system. The Coinstar barcode is IAN2 code '29' and takes the shape of 29-XXXXX-00000-C, where 'XXXXX' represents a transaction number assigned by the Coinstar system and '00000' is the value of the tender.

**Barcoded Tender Value Length:** This parameter specifies the number of digits that reflect the amount of a Coinstar voucher. The location of the first digit is determined in the parameter Barcoded Tender Value Location. (Coinstar Value Length = 5)

**Barcoded Tender Value Location:** This parameter specifies the location of the first digit of the tender amount, within the barcode of a Coinstar voucher. (Coinstar Value Location = 8)

**Barcoded Tender Number:** This parameter specifies the tender type defined in the system (under Tender Maintenance) for Coinstar vouchers.

**Barcoded Tender Prefix:** This parameter specifies the prefix code number for the tender type defined in the system for Coinstar vouchers. (Coinstar Tender Prefix = 29)

**Delete Record from ECCA Once Period Length has Expired:** This parameter provides the option of automatically deleting the barcoded tender record from the ECCA file once the period length has expired. The ECCA utility retains the Coinstar voucher number (XXXXX) for at least 30 days and when a new

Coinstar voucher is processed, it is validated against the file to determine if it has previously been 'cashed', similar to a bad check file. Automatic deletion of Barcoded Tender ECCA accounts will occur during the End of Day process.

## Miscellaneous (sub-folder)

**POS tender number to accumulate tenders out of range:** Use this parameter to define the tender number that will accumulate values for tender #26 or higher for reports printed at the POS.

**Tenders for bookkeeping items sold as normal items:** Use this parameter to define a default tender that Sellable Media functionality will use for items that are not tender swap media. This is only used if Sellable Media is host supported.

## Refunds Tender (sub-folder)

**Refund Tender:** This parameter indicates the tender to which all refunds performed will be applied.

**Refund dummy tender:** When the system is working with "Refund Tender", this parameter indicates the contra tender that is used to balance the accountability.

## Signature Capture Tenders (sub-folder)

**Signature Capture Tender Number 1:** This parameter enables the option of selecting a tender that will require the customer to sign at the payments terminal so the signature can be captured locally and be displayed within the Electronic Journal.

**Signature Capture Tender Number 2:** This parameter enables the option of selecting a second tender that will require the customer to sign at the payments terminal so the signature can be captured locally and be displayed within the Electronic Journal.

**Signature Capture Tender Number 3:** This parameter enables the option of selecting a third tender that will require the customer

to sign at the payments terminal so the signature can be captured locally and be displayed within the Electronic Journal.

## Rounding

This option is used to define the rules for rounding up or down, the balance due by the customer. This influences the change amount due to the customer. Rounding is normally, but not necessarily, applied to cash tenders.

**Rounding on Total:** This parameter enables the Rounding on Total option in the store based on the individual tender rounding parameter within Tender Maintenance.

**Tender for Rounding:** This parameter to define the tender used for tracking the amount of the rounded tender.

**Item Line and Ticket Total Rounding Method:** This parameter specifies the rounding method per item and ticket total. Rounding options are 'no rounding', 'to the unit' or 'to the tenth'.

**Suffix Rounding:** This is a multi-parameter that specifies the rounding value for each cent value. For example, for one cent, you may decide to round *down* to zero. In this case, enter 0 under suffix 1. To round *up* from 4 cents to 5 cents, enter 5 under suffix 4.

## Tax

**Don't Print Tax Report if Tax is Zero:** This parameter provides the option of not printing the tax report (e.g., 'SUB-TOTAL', 'TOTAL TAX', and 'TOTAL') on the customer receipt if tax is zero.

**Omit Tax ID Number Prompt for Tax Exempt:** This parameter provides the option to omit the 'Enter Tax Exempt No.' cashier prompt on a tax-exempt order. When set to Yes, the prompt will not display. When set to No, the 'Enter Tax Exempt No.' prompt will display and the customer tax-exempt number entered will print on the customer receipt.

**Enable Scanner at Tax Exempt Prompt:** This parameter enables the scanner at the Tax Exempt Prompt. When this parameter is set to Yes, the scanner will be enabled when the Tax Exempt prompt is displayed on the POS. The Tax ID number will be taken from the scanned barcode.

**Note:**

A user hook entry (hook\_after\_tax\_exempt\_scan) exists at this point for additional functionality to be developed – namely the validation of the store-maintained Tax IDs. If a barcode was scanned at the Tax Exempt Prompt and the General System Parameter “Hooks in system” (found in the Store \ POST \ Operational \ POST User Hooks folder) is set to “Yes”, the new user hook will be called.

**Number of Tax Rates to Accumulate Amounts:** This parameter specifies the number of tax rates (up to 8) to be tracked in the system. If 0, no tax rates are accumulated, except for tax rate 1. If 8, all taxes with a tax rate are accumulated. If 1-7, the first 7 rates will be used to accumulate taxable amounts.

**Display Individual Tax on Receipt:** This parameter provides the options to print tax, by individual rate, on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, the total taxable amount and total tax due, by individual rate, will print on the customer receipt. When set to No, the ‘Total Tax’ amount will print on the customer receipt.

**Allow Cashier to Select Specific Tax for Tax Exempt:** This parameter provides the option to allow the cashier to select the specific tax rate to be exempted.

**Allow Cashier to Select Specific Tax for Tax Reversal:** This parameter provides the option to allow the cashier to select the specific tax rate that is to be reversed.

## Tax Reversal (sub-folder)

**Tax Rates for Tax Reversal:** This parameter provides the option to specify the individual tax rates (rates 1 to 8) eligible for tax reversal.

## Trading Stamps

**Trading Stamps in System:** This parameter provides the option to activate the Trading Stamp feature in the system.

**Purchase Amount Required for One Stamp:** This parameter specifies the purchase amount necessary to award one stamp. If this specified amount is reached, a stamp will be awarded to the customer. (The amount must be equal to or less than 999.99). For example, if you specify \$ 5.00 and a customer's purchase total is \$10.00, then the system awards 2 stamps.

**Multiple Calculation Method:** This parameter provides the option to specify the appropriate method to award multiples of trading stamps. Options are 'None', 'Department Eligible Total' or 'By Stamps Earned'. The POS terminal multiplies the stamps already awarded, by the multiplication factor according to the method selected here.

**Before Vendor Coupons:** This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after vendor coupons.

**Before Bonus Coupons:** This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after bonus coupons.

**Before Store Coupons:** This parameter provides the option to award trading stamps based on the purchase total, before or after store coupons.

**Template Name (Text) to Print on Receipt:** This parameter specifies the name of the template (previously defined) to print the required 'stamps earned' message on the customer receipt.

**Display/Print Points with Decimal Point:** This parameter provides the option to display and print points with a decimal point. When set to Yes, the trading stamps will display and print with a decimal point.

**Do not Display Message on Operator Screen:** This parameter provides the option to avoid displaying the Trading Stamp message on the Cashier display. When set to Yes, the Trading Stamp message will not display on the Cashier screen.

## Report

**Subtract Cashier Declarations from POS Reports:** The parameter provides the option to deduct cashier declarations from media totals on the Over Limit Cashier/POS Report. This report shows which cashiers/POS have more cash (media) in their drawer than the amount specified in the *Cash in Drawer Limit* parameter.

When the *Subtract Cashier Declarations for POS Reports* parameter is set to Yes, cashier declarations are subtracted from the media totals, when calculating the actual amount in the cash drawer for this report.

**Number of Decimal Places to Show:** This parameter indicates the number of decimal places to be shown on POS reports.

## Gift Certificates

### Voucher (sub-folder)

The Gift Vouchers option enables the shopper to purchase Gift Vouchers at the POS terminal and to assign them a redemption quantity, and then to use them as a normal tender at POS terminal. Gift Vouchers will be printed with their amount at purchase time, and then at redemption time will be printed again for cancellation.

**Gift Voucher Template Number:** This parameter specifies the template number for generating and printing the gift voucher at the POS terminal. Valid template range is 0 to 99.

**Gift Voucher Tender Number for Club Card:** This parameter specifies the Tender Type for Gift Voucher redemption.

**Gift Voucher in System:** This parameter provides the option to enable electronic gift card functionality in the system. This functionality precedes the use of Bar Code Programming for the selling of gift cards.

**Gift Voucher Range: From/To:** This parameter enables the user to define the range of valid Gift Voucher numbers. Each voucher can include up to 13 digits (EAN code starting with 24 and module 10 check digit).

## Gift Certificate Change (sub-folder)

**Gift Certificate Change:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the gift certificate tender. Click the field's selection arrow and choose the tender used for Gift Certificates.

**Gift Certificate Change Tender:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the gift certificate change tender. Click the field's selection arrow and choose the tender used for Gift Certificate change.

**Gift Certificate Change Amount:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the gift certificate change threshold amount. If the change due is greater than the amount set here, a gift certificate slip will be printed for the change amount and no cash change will be given.

## Phone Card

**CC for post void transaction with phone card items:** This parameter defines the control check to be called when voiding transactions that include phone cards.

## Electronic Check

**Prompt Cashier to Return Check to Customer:** Set this parameter to Yes to prompt the cashier to return the check to the customer at the end.

**Duration of Return Check to Customer prompt:** This parameter enables setting the duration in seconds of the Return Check to Customer prompt. If set to '0', the cashier must clear the prompt manually (C).

**Electronic Check Message Template:** This parameter provides the option of selecting a template that will be printed at the end of the ticket.

**Electronic Check Message:** Click the field's selection arrow and choose when to print the Electronic Check Message: Not to print, always print or only print if a check has been tendered.

**CC for Check Image Bypass:** Click the field's selection arrow and choose the Control Check to issue when Check Imaging is bypassed.

**Manual Check Tender:** Click the field's selection arrow and choose the check tender to be used in the event the Check Conversion fails.

## MobileLime

**MobileLime Tender:** Set this parameter to "Yes" to provide the option of selecting the MobileLime tender.

**MobileLime Discount Tender:** Set this parameter to "Yes" to provide the option of selecting the MobileLime discount tender.

**MobileLime Timeout:** Enter the timeout (in seconds) before canceling the MobileLime transaction. A setting of "0" indicates no timeout is set.

**MobileLime Prefix of Terminal ID:** Enter the store's Terminal ID prefix number (which is used along with the lane number to form a unique identification code for each lane).

**MobileLime Discount Number:** Enter the ISS45 discount to be linked to the MobileLime Discount.

**Prompt for MobileLime Loyalty at Start of Ticket:** This parameter controls MobileLime prompting at the start of a ticket. When set to "Yes" (and no other loyalty prompts are set for the beginning of the ticket) the MobileLime Loyalty prompt will display during no sale mode.

**Notes:**

- If the General System Parameter "Do not prompt for Freq Shopper at the beginning of a ticket" (located in the Store \ POST \ Monetary \ Frequent Shopper folder) is set to "No", this new parameter will be ignored and the MobileLime Loyalty prompt can only be accessed with the 1140 function code or the MobileLime tender.

- If the General System Parameter "Prompt for Member Card at Start of Ticket" (located in the Store \ POST \ Operational \ Member Card \ Member Card folder) is set to "Yes", this new parameter will be ignored and the MobileLime Loyalty prompt can only be accessed with the 1140 function code or the MobileLime tender.

- The General System Parameter "Host CCMS Type" (located in the Store \ Technical folder) must be set to MobileLime.

## Presentation

### Poll Customer Display (sub-folder)

These parameters are used to customize the messages appearing on the two-line customer display. Different messages can be programmed to display on the POS terminal when in a 'Closed' state as well as a 'Next Customer' (sales) state.

There are four lines available for messages, however if you are using a two-line display, only two messages can be displayed. Messages may consist of any alphanumeric character, and can be in upper or lower case.

**Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 1:** This parameter defines the message that will appear on the top line (Line 1) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 2:** This parameter defines the message that will appear on the bottom line (Line 2) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 3:** If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the third line (Line 3) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Line 4:** If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the fourth line (Line 4) of the customer display in a 'Closed' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Length:** This parameter specifies the maximum length (number of characters) of the message per line for the 'Next Customer' (sales) state. If the Width entered is greater than the customer display width, the message scrolls. The Width entered must be at least the width of the message entered or it does not display correctly. If 0 is entered, the display will default to 'Next Customer Please' or 'Secure Mode', if the terminal is in a 'secure' state. The valid range is 0 to 49.

**Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 1:** This parameter defines the message that will appear on the top line (Line 1) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 2:** This parameter defines the message that will appear on the bottom line (Line 2) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 3:** If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the third line (Line 3) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-On Lane Message Line 4:** If the customer display supports more than 2 message lines, this parameter defines the message that will appear on the fourth line (Line 4) of the customer display in a 'Next Customer' state. Maximum number of characters is 49.

**Customer Display Sign-Off Lane Message Length:** This parameter specifies the maximum length (number of characters) of the message per line for the 'POS Closed' state. If the Width entered is greater than the customer display width, the message scrolls. The Width entered must be at least the width of the message entered or it does not display correctly. If 0 is entered, the customer display will default to 'This Lane is Closed'. The valid range is 0 to 49.

## Retailer Information (sub-folder)

These parameters allow the user to enter retailer information to be printed on multi-part receipts, when tendering with a credit card.

## Retailer Information (sub-folder 1-5)

Retailer information details may be added for up to five credit cards. Each credit card multi-part receipts supports up to five lines of retailer information. These lines are printed on the multi-part receipt below the header, during a transaction with a credit card. After entering retailer information, link it to the corresponding tender type.

**Retailer Information (1-5) Line 1:** Line 1 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**Retailer Information (1-5) Line 2:** Line 2 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**Retailer Information (1-5) Line 3:** Line 3 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**Retailer Information (1-5) Line 4:** Line 4 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**Retailer Information (1-5) Line 5:** Line 5 is a free-form text field, supporting up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

## Receipt

### Regular Printing (sub-folder)

#### GENERAL (sub-folder)

**Print Currency Symbol on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of printing the currency symbol (e.g., \$) on the customer receipt. (Yes/No)

**Print Duplicate Receipt on Loans & Pickups:** This parameter provides the option of printing a duplicate receipt on loans and pickups at the POS terminals. (Yes/No)

**Print Separate Receipts for Each Tender on Pickups:** This parameter provides the option of printing individual receipts for each tender type picked up. (Yes/No)

**Print “PLU not Found” Slip:** This parameter specifies that when an item is entered but not found in the PLU file, a slip will be printed, on which the cashier can manually enter the details of the unfound item, that can be used later to update the item file. (Yes/No)

**Print “PLU not Found on Inquiry” Slip:** This parameter specifies that when a price query is entered on an item not found in the PLU file, a slip will be printed, on which the cashier can

manually enter details of the unfound item; that can later be entered into the system. (Yes/No)

**Print Total Number of Items on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option to print the total number of items purchased on the customer receipt. Options are 'None', 'On Balance due Line' or 'On Separate Line'.

**Customer Currency Code on Right of Value:** This parameter provides the option to print the currency symbol to the right of the value on the customer receipt.

**Merge Bonus Coupon into Store Coupon:** This parameter provides the option to merge the bonus coupon total with store coupon total on the customer receipt.

**Omit Non-Member Card Promotion in Savings Report:** This parameter provides the option to omit printing non-member promotions in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt. (Note: Non-member promotions are promotions that are rewarded to every customer meeting the necessary purchase requirements.)

**Omit Printing of Total:** Set this parameter to 'Yes' to omit the 'Total' line printed after the 'Total Tax' line. When the parameter is set to 'Yes', only the Balance Due will be printed at the end of the ticket.

**Detailed Tail Format:** Set this parameter to 'Yes' to print a more detailed tail on the receipt. The tail will show the full word for 'Store', 'Cashier', 'Register' and 'Ticket', instead of 'S', 'C', 'R' and '#'.

**Receipt Line Spacing:** The parameter provides the option of modifying line spacing to reduce the length of the receipt. For an identical transaction, "Reduced" spacing is approximately ½ inch shorter than a "Normal" receipt. "Compact" spacing is approximately ½ inch shorter than a "Reduced" receipt.

**Print Tare Weight on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of printing the tare weight on the receipt. Click on the field's selection arrow and choose: No, Print All Tares or Print Manual Tares.

## End Ticket (sub-folder)

**Print Cashier Name on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of printing the Cashier's name on the customer receipt. The cashier name will print at the bottom of the receipt, before the trailer.

**Suppress Printing Points on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of not printing member card points on the receipt. (Yes/No)

**Print Change at the End of Receipt:** This parameter specifies the location of printing the customer's change on the receipt. When Yes is selected, the customer's change will print at the end of the customer receipt, after the tax report. When No is selected, the customer's change will print after 'Balance Due' and the tendered amount.

**Additional Template Name to Print on Receipt Bottom:** This selection provides the name of the template for printing a message at the end of the receipt (on a separate perforation).

**Print Customer Slip:** This parameter controls when a slip is printed at the end of the order. Click the field's selection arrow and choose "Members Only" (to print a slip when a member card is entered during the sale) or "All Customers" (to print a slip for all transactions). The default setting is "No Slip".

**Customer Slip Template:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the template for the customer slip. Enter the name of the template defined within the Templates/Multi-part Receipt program. (The template name must have 10 characters and match the name of the template in the template database).

**CC for Printing Customer Slip for Non-Member:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the control check required when choosing the "Prompt for non-members" option.

**Payout/ROA Slip Template:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the template for the Payout/ROA slip.

**Template Name for Return Totals Slip:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the template for return totals slip. Enter the name of the template defined within the Templates/Multi-part Receipt program.

**Number of Slips to Print for Return Totals:** This parameter specifies how many copies of return totals slip will be printed.

**Print Customer Slip After:** This parameter enables the option to print a template on a customer receipt every X customers. Enter the number of positive tickets (up to 9999) to print before printing the Customer Slip Template. If set to 0, the feature is disabled.

**Template to Print Customer Slip After Every X Customers:** Enter the name of the defined template (under Templates/Multiple Part Receipts) to print at the bottom of the customer receipt after specified slip print interval (above) has been met. (Note: The template entered must be defined within Templates/Multi Part Receipts or no template will be printed. The sample CUST\_TPL template may be used and modified to meet the store's purposes).

## Balance Due (sub-folder)

**Print "Bal. Due" Each Time Subtotal Pressed:** The parameter provides the option to print 'balance due' on the customer receipt each time the subtotal key is pressed.

**Print "Bal. Due" After Each Tender:** The parameter provides the option to print 'Balance Due' on the customer receipt each time a tender is processed.

**Tax Report Before Balance Due:** The parameter provides the option to print the tax report before 'Balance Due' on the customer receipt. If No is selected, the tax report will print after 'Balance Due' on the customer receipt.

**Print Balance Due in Large Font:** This parameter provides the option of printing 'Balance Due' in a large font on the customer receipt.

## Coupons (sub-folder)

**Print Coupons in Special Format:** This parameter provides the option to print coupons in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

**Omit Coupon Total in "YOUR savings" Group:** This parameter provides the option to print a coupon total line (text line 'TOTAL CPNS' with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

**Vendor Coupon Description:** This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined vendor coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the vendor coupon tender description in reports.

**Store Coupon Description:** This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined store coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the store coupon tender description in reports.

**Bonus Coupon Description:** This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined bonus coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the bonus coupon tender description in reports.

**Triple Coupon Description:** This parameter provides the option to print a user-defined triple coupon description on the customer receipt. This description only appears on the customer receipt and does not change the triple coupon tender description in reports.

**Suppress Coupon Required Print:** This parameter provides the option of suppresses the coupon-scanned notification (line of

text) on the receipt when a coupon required promotion is triggered.

## Savings (sub-folder)

**Print Saving Plus Total on Receipt:** This parameter provides the option to print a 'Savings Plus Total' on the customer receipt. The 'Savings Plus Total' is the sales total of items purchased in departments that have the attribute, 'Include in Savings Plus Total', set (refer to *Office User's Guide, Department Maintenance*, for details).

**Savings Group Total Text:** This parameter defines the text to print for the 'Additional Savings Group' total line on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

**Print Savings in Special Format:** This parameter provides the option to print additional savings total in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

**Omit Your Savings Summary Report:** This parameter provides the option to omit printing the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, the savings summary report will not print on the customer receipt. When set to No, the 'Your Savings Today' text line, with the relevant savings description and amount, will print on the receipt.

**Detailed Item Savings:** This parameter provides the option to print savings, by item, in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

**Omit Item Savings Total:** This parameter provides the option to omit printing an Item Savings Total line (with count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

**Omit Savings Total:** This parameter provides the option to print savings total line (text line 'TOTAL SAVINGS', with count and

amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the customer receipt.

**Present All Total Savings as Negative Values:** This parameter provided the option to print all savings totals in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report, as negative values on the customer receipt (i.e., a minus sign to the left of the value).

**Print Savings Marketing Message:** This parameter provides the option to print a Savings Marketing Message, highlighting the dollar amount and percent savings, on the customer receipt, for qualifying customers. When this parameter is set to Yes, the *Saving Marketing Percent %* parameter, below, determines what marketing savings message will print on the customer receipt. If this parameter, *Print Savings Marketing Message* is set to No, a 'You Could Have Saved' message will print on the customer receipt.

**Your Savings Today Text:** This parameter provides the option to define the header to print on the summary savings report (refer to parameter 'Your Savings Today') on the bottom of the customer receipt. The field is a free-form text parameter and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters. If this field is left blank, the default header ('Your Savings Today') will print.

**Savings Marketing Percent:** This parameter specifies the savings marketing percent. If this saving percent is matched or exceeded in the sales order, the Marketing Message with Percent template, below, will print on the customer. If the savings in the sales transaction does not reach this percent, the Marketing Message without Percent template, below, will print on the customer receipt.

**Template for Savings Marketing Message with Percent:** This parameter defines the name of the template for the Savings Marketing Message with Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This 'Savings Message' will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order exceeds the value in the *Saving Marketing Percent* parameter above.

**Template for Savings Marketing Message without Percent:** This parameter defines the name of the template for the Savings

Marketing Message without Percent as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts. This message will print on the customer receipt when the percent savings in the order does not exceed the value in the *Saving Marketing Percent* parameter above.

**Template for Member Card/Frequent Shopper Print:** This parameter defines the name of the template for the Member Card/Frequent Shopper as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts.

**Member Card Saving Message:** This parameter provides the option to define a member card saving message (for example, 'Club Royal Savings') that will print for member promotions in the 'Your Savings Today' summary report on the bottom of the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the description from the promotion record (for example, '10% Bakery Discount') will print.

**Suppress Signs from Promotions Printing:** This parameter provides the option to suppress signs from promotion printing.

**Member Card Promotion Only Text for "Your Savings Today" Report:** If parameter *Omit Non-member Card Promotion in Savings Report* is set to Yes, this parameter provides the option to print a member card promotion only total (count and amount) in the 'Your Savings Today' summary. This parameter is a free-form text field, supporting up to 20 alphanumeric characters.

**Your Savings Summary Report Template:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the template for the Your Savings Summary Report. If no template is provided, the default report will be printed.

**Exclude Member Promotions from Bonus Buy:** This parameter provides the option of excluding the Member Promotion savings from the Bonus Buy Totals.

**Individual Member Promotion:** This parameter provides the option of selecting one member promotion that will be printed on a separate field in the Your Savings Summary Report.

**Print Linked Promotion Summary:** This parameter allows/disallows a summary line to print on the receipt for multiple promotions linked to a Credit Program for a single item.

**Linked Promotion Summary Text:** This parameter holds the description that displays next to the combined (linked) promotion discount amount on the customer receipt. For example "Promo Savings".

## Signature (sub-folder)

**Suppress Signature Receipt on Credit Transactions:** This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip for selected customers. Options are 'Never', 'Member' (member card holders) or 'Always' (all customers). This feature requires buffer printing.

**Minimum Amount for Printing Signature Receipt:** This parameter provides the option of suppressing the printing of the credit card signature slip when the credit card value is below a minimum dollar amount. Valid range is 0.00 to – 999999999.99.

**Prompt Cashier for Signature Required:** This parameter provides the option to prompt the cashier for a customer signature on credit card transaction when the signature slip is not suppressed.

**Suppress Signature Capture on Customer Receipt:** This parameter enables the ability to print the signature on the customer credit card receipt. This feature requires signature capture support on the Electronic Payment System. Click the selection arrow and choose Always, Never, Member or Handled by Hook.

**Note:**

MTXEPS versions containing signature capture on the Pin Pad are required for printing the signature on the receipt. In addition, the store must have Signature Capture set up in MTXEPS for each tender that will utilize this feature (i.e. "O - Signature Capture" in the TAC Sequence). Please consult the MTXEPS User Guide for these settings.

## Bonus Buy (sub-folder)

**PLU Comparison Printing Type:** This parameter specifies the options for printing PLU Price Comparison items on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None – No printing on the receipt
- Summary – Print summary of PLU Price Comparison savings on the bottom of customer receipt.
- Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings per item on the customer receipt.
- Summary & Line – Print PLU Price Comparison savings at item level and at the end of the order on the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report Header:** This parameter provides the option to print a header on the PLU Price Comparison summary at the bottom of the customer receipt (for example \$\$\$\$\$\$\$\$).

**Print Summary Report for Type 1:** This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 1 (e.g., Bonus Buy) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report for Type 2:** This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 2 (e.g., Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report for Type 3:** This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 3 (e.g., Matched Advertised Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report for Type 4:** This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 4 (e.g., Private Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report for Type 5:** This parameter provides the option to print PLU Price Comparison Type 5 (e.g., Competitor

Compare Label Savings) items in the PLU Price Comparison Summary Report on the bottom of the customer receipt.

**Print Summary Report for Total:** The parameter provides the option to print a Total Price Comparison Savings in the Summary Report.

**Print Summary Report Footer:** This parameter provides the option to print a footer on the Price Comparison summary on the bottom of the customer receipt (for example, \$\$\$\$\$\$).

**Bonus Buy Savings Text for “Your Savings Today” Report:** This selection provides the option to define the text that displays next to Bonus Buy (price comparison) savings.

## Tax (sub-folder)

**Omit Tax Report Total:** If parameter, *Display Individual Tax on Receipt*, is selected, a Tax Report will print on the customer receipt, which lists taxable amount and tax due, by individual tax rate. The ‘Omit Tax Report Total’ parameter provides the option to print an additional ‘Total Tax’ summary line for the Tax Report on the customer receipt. When this parameter is set to No, this ‘Total Tax’ summary line will print on the receipt.

**Order Tax Report Header:** This parameter provides the option to define the header to print on the Tax Report (refer to parameter *Display Individual Tax on Receipt*). The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as the first line in the Tax Report on the customer receipt. If this field is left blank, the default header (TAX-CODE, TAXABLE-VAL and TAX-VALUE) will print.

**Bulk Tax Message Template Name:** This selection provides the name of the template for printing item bulk tax information (as it appears in Database Management\POST Controls\Templates\Multi-Part Receipts) on the receipt. If the

transaction includes an item subject to bulk tax, information from this template will appear on the receipt.

## Buffer Printing (sub-folder)

### **Print Linked Items Directly Under the Items They Are Linked To:**

This parameter provides the option of placing linked items (i.e bottle deposits) next to the item that triggered their insertion into the receipt. If set to No, the linked item will appear based on other established sort criteria.

### **Bonus Buy Savings Text for Enhanced Net Price Printing:**

Enter the text that will print on the receipt for Bonus Buy savings if the parameter 'Enhanced Net Price Printing' is set to 'Yes'.

**Buffer Printing:** This parameter provides the option to store the sales transaction information in the printer buffer (memory) until completion of the transaction. When buffered printing is enabled, the printer beeps each time an item is entered. Select this option to enable sorting of items on the receipt (Organized Receipt).

**Combine Same Items:** If Buffer Printing is selected, this parameter provides the option to allow 'like' items to print as one entry on the customer receipt. When set to Yes, multiples of an item print as one entry on the receipt, regardless of the order in when they are rung up.

**Omit Voided and Cancelled Items:** If Buffer Printing is selected, this parameter provides the options to omit printing voided or cancelled items on the customer receipt. (Yes/No)

**Total Sales Text:** If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Sales line on the customer receipt. The description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print as a 'Total Sales' summary, after all the sorted item and department sales entries, on the customer receipt.

**Total Coupons Text:** If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides a text description for the Total Coupon line on the customer receipt. The description can be up

to 30 alphanumeric characters and will print after the 'sorted' coupons, on the customer receipt.

**Group All Coupons:** If Buffer Printing and Sort Receipt are selected, this parameter provides the option to group all coupons together on the customer receipt.

**Group Complex Promotions in Additional Savings Section:**

This parameter provides the option to include complex promotions in the 'Additional Savings' section on the customer receipt. Examples of complex promotions include:

- Enhanced promotions with the following attributes set:
  - Reward types other than credits or credits per item
  - Give reward on the highest/lowest
  - Minimum purchase
  - 2nd Thresholds
  - Minimum Item weight
  - Maximum Item weight
  - Coupon Type of one time only or one time per reward
- Enhanced promotions that require a member card
- Group promotions that require a member card
- Level promotions that require a member card

**Print Voids, Refunds Special Format:** This parameter provides the option to print voids and refunds in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

## Sort Receipt (sub-folder)

**Sort Receipt:** This parameter enables the Reorganized Receipt feature; which provides various combinations for printing of the sales receipt for the benefit of the customer. To sort customer receipts, the *Buffer Printing* parameter must be selected.

**Main Sort:** This parameter enables the user to define how the ticket is sorted and printed on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None

- Department Name
- Department Name plus Total
- Item Name
- Price Ascending
- Price Descending
- Department Number

**Second Sort:** This parameter provides an optional second sort of items on the customer receipt. Options are:

- None
- Alpha (Sort items alphabetically)
- Price Ascending
- Price Descending

## Net Price (sub-folder)

**Net Price Text Message:** If the *Net Price Printing* parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line. This is a free-form text field and the net price description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

**Net Price Free Text Message:** If the *Net Price Printing* parameter is enabled, this parameter defines the text to print on the net price line when an item is free (i.e., net price is zero). This is a free-form text field and the net price free description can be up to 40 alphanumeric characters.

**Net Price Printing:** This parameter enables the Net Price Printing option, which prints a net price line for items on promotion. When set to Yes, items on promotion will print regular price, promotion amount and net price on the customer receipt (per item). This feature requires that Buffer Printing be turned on.

**Print Net Price in Special Format:** This parameter provides the option to print Net Price items in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

**Enhanced Net Price Printing:** Set this parameter to 'Yes' to print the item price on the receipt reduced by the amount of

supported promotion savings. Also, set this parameter to 'Yes' when using parameters 'Print regular price line' or 'Print promotion savings line'.

**Print Promotions Savings Line:** Set this parameter to 'Yes' to print the promotion savings line below the item when a promotion is awarded. The “Enhanced Net Price Printing” parameter must be set to Yes in order for this parameter to function properly.

**Print Regular Price Line:** Set this parameter to 'Yes' to print the regular price below the item when a promotion is awarded or a bonus buy savings is due to print. The “Enhanced Net Price Printing” parameter must be set to Yes in order for this parameter to function properly.

## Saving (sub-folder)

**Your Savings Today:** If Buffer Printing is selected; this parameter provides the option to print this text line with relevant savings description and amount, on the bottom of the customer receipt. For example, if items on promotion, reduction, offer, or discount have been rung up, this savings summary will print on the customer receipt.

**Savings Group Header Text:** This parameter defines the header to print for 'Additional Savings Group' promotions on the customer receipt. This is a free-form text field and the description can be up to 30 alphanumeric characters.

**Print Additional Savings in Special Format:** This parameter provides the option to print 'Additional Savings' promotion in a special format on the customer receipt. Options are None, Bold, Italic, Bold Italic, or Color.

**Print Saving Totals on Receipt When Buffered Printing is Off:** This parameter provides the option of printing a discounts quantity and savings total line on the receipt when buffered printing turned off. If set to No, the line will be omitted.

## Signs (sub-folder)

**Currency:** This parameter specifies the currency sign (e.g., \$) to print on the customer receipt.

**Minus:** This parameter specifies the minus sign (e.g., -) to print on the customer receipt.

**Decimal:** This parameter specifies the sign be used for decimal quantity input (usually a point).

**Format:** This parameter specifies the format sign (,) to be used.

**Non Taxable Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by non-taxable items on the customer receipt (usually blank).

**Multiple Tax Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the sign to print on the receipt when two or more taxes are applicable.

**Food Stamp Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by Food Stamp eligible items on the customer receipt.

**Non Food Stamp Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print by Non-Food Stamp eligible items on the customer receipt.

**Cost Plus Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to be printed next to a Cost Plus item or department on the customer receipt.

**Non Cost Plus Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to be printed when a sale is a not a Cost Plus item or department.

**Frequent Shopper Print Character:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to an item that has a Frequent Shopper discount.

**Non Frequent Shopper Print Character:** This parameter the option of specifying the character to print next to an item that does not have a Frequent Shopper discount.

**Print Currency on Check (Dollar):** This parameter specifies the text to print on the check, with Check Printing. For example, 'Dollars'.

**Print Currency on Check (Cents):** This parameter specifies the text to print on the check, with Check Printing. For example, 'Cents'.

**WIC Sale Sign:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to WIC (Women, Infants, & Children) items on the customer receipt.

**DEA Sale Sign:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the character to print next to DEA items (items controlled by Drug Enforcement Administration) on the customer receipt.

**Multiple Tax Sign If More Than One Tax Active:** This parameter provides the option of printing the multiple tax print character (defined using the *Multiple Tax Print Character* setting) for items subject to more than one tax. (The tax signs print to the right of the price on the receipt). If set to No each individual tax sign will print.

**Non-Rx Healthcare print character:** This parameter defines the character to print when an item has the Non-Rx Healthcare Item flag set in PLU Maintenance.

**Rx print character:** This parameter defines the character to print when an item has the Rx Item flag set in PLU Maintenance.

## Audit Printer (sub-folder)

**Level of Detail on Audit Printer:** This parameter specifies the level of ticket detail to log to the in-lane POS audit printer or Electronic Journal. Options are:

- Minimum – Nothing prints
- Medium - No item details print

- Full – All details print

## **Additional Tender Information**

This feature is currently not supported.

## **Full Screen Customer Display**

**Include Bonus Buy Savings in Total Savings Box:** This parameter provides the option of including the Bonus Buy Savings in the Total Savings Box on the customer display.

## General

**Default Minimum Purchase Amount for Promotions:** This parameter specifies the minimum purchase amount required before a promotion offer can be given. Valid range 0.00 to 9999999.99.

**Type of Extended Balance Due to Display:** This parameter provides the option to select the type of Balance Due, to display on the customer display. Options are 'None' and 'Food Stamp'. If 'None' is selected, only 'Balance Due' will display on the customer display. If 'Food Stamp' is selected, 'Balance Due' will display on the top line of the display and 'F/S Subtotal' will display on the bottom line of the display.

**Note:**

Set this parameter to "Food Stamp" if the WinPOS.INI file has been modified to display the food stamp eligible balance in the lower left hand corner of the customer display.

**Multiple Languages in System:** This parameter allows multiple languages to be support on the POS terminal.

**Always Read PLUs from PC:** This parameter provides the option to always read the PLU from only the MFS1 PLU file. When set to Yes, the POS terminals ignore their own PLU files and read only from the MFS1 PLU file.

**Check Guarantee Functionality:** This functionality is currently not implemented.

**Sales Printer Sound:** This parameter specifies the printer sound at the POS terminal. Options are:

- None - No beep
- Buffer Printing - Beeps with every item
- Always - Allows buffer printing without the beeps

**Cashier File is Resident on Post:** This parameter provides the option to load the Cashier file onto the POS terminals. When selected, this option provides better control of off-line cashier

sign-on. If the POS terminals are off-line, cashier passwords are validated against the cashier file that is resident on the POS Terminal.

*Notes:*

- If you do not select this option, POS terminals receive cashier data when cashiers sign on or when supervisor authorization is required.
- If your store works with the parameter, *System integrity in system*, add the EMPL.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities.
- Loading a large Cashier File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.

**Bad Account File is Resident on POST:** This parameter provides the option to load the Bad Accounts file onto the POS terminals. To load the file onto the POS terminal for the first time, you must either perform a Cold Start or run a general batch file that will insert all bad account records.

Maintenance is sent to the POS terminal any time a change is made to the bad accounts file in the Back Office via Bad Account Maintenance. Any changes made to Bad Accounts through General Batches, generates maintenance to POS terminals.

While in off-line mode, bad accounts are validated against the Bad Accounts File, which is resident on the POS terminal.

*Notes:*

- If your store works with the parameter, *System integrity in system*, add the ACCT.QDX file to the QDX Files Checksum Table in Field Engineer's Utilities.
- Loading a large Bad Accounts File onto the POS terminal takes up memory and can affect performance.

**Euro Rate:** This parameter defines the conversion rate (numeric value) between the Euro and local currency.

**Prompt for Customers ID on Save Transaction:** Select this checkbox to enable cashier to enter the customer's ID before saving a transaction. Recalling a transaction can be done by

entering the customer's ID. The customer ID prints on the saved ticket.

If cashier does not want to enter the customer's ID or if the customer does not have ID available, the cashier may select 'No' when prompted.

The transaction can be recalled in three ways:

- Entering the Terminal and Ticket numbers
- Entering the Customer's ID
- Scanning the barcode

**Prompt Large Total on Cashier Display:** This parameter provides the option to display a large 'Balance Due' message on the Cashier Display, after the Total key is pressed, providing for easy viewing by the Cashier.

**Consecutive Scan Count Display:** This parameter provides the option to display a 'Consecutive Scan/Item Count' field on the Cashier Display, showing the number of times the same product has been sold consecutively by scanning or manual entry. (Yes/No)

**Number of Minutes to Prompt Before EOW Start:** Prior to the start of the End-of-Week process, a message is displayed on the screen, indicating that the End-of-Week is ready to start. This parameter specifies the number of minutes prior to the start of the EOW to display the message. This message requests confirmation to begin the EOW process. Valid range is 0 to 99 minutes. (This parameter is reserved for future development.)

**Number of Minutes to Prompt (After Warning), to Confirmation:** This parameter specifies the number of minutes following the EOW prompt, after which the End-of-Week will automatically start. Valid range is 0 to 99 minutes. (This parameter is reserved for future development.)

**POS Date Format:** This parameter provides the option to select the date format used on the POS terminal display. The American date format is MM/DD/YYYY. The European date format is DD/MM/YYYY.

**Supervisor Privileges:** This parameter is a multi-parameter, which allows up to 8 supervisor privilege levels in order to establish proper authorization for handling events, such as Control Checks, at the POS terminal.

**Megabytes Remaining on POS Disk to Initiate a Warning Message:** This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space (in megabytes) required on a POS terminal. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

**Deliver Survey Messages on Receipt Every XX Transactions:** This parameter specifies the interval between each survey message print. Enter the number to transactions between random survey printing on the customer's receipt.

**Enhanced Large Total Prompt on Cashier Display Sub Total, Tax and FS Eligible Amount:** This parameter specifies whether to increase the size of the total prompts on the cashier display.

**Verify Weight Changes at Last Keystroke:** This parameter will verify the weight from the scale on a manual price weighted item on the last keystroke of the transaction. This eliminates the possibility the weight on the scale could change between the time the department and price is requested and the time the cashier hits the Enter key after price entry.

**Display Customer Name From EFT Card on Cashier Display:** This parameter controls the display the customers name from the magnetic strip on the cashier screen once an EFT transaction has been approved until the cash drawer is closed.

**Enhanced PLU Group Display:** This parameter enables selecting the enhanced mode for the PLU Groups screen. The enhanced screen also displays the Qty and whether an item is weighed or not.

**Default Item/Department Product Code:** This parameter specifies the Product Code to be used by POS when Item/Department sold doesn't have a linked product code. (Note: This parameter must be set to use Fleet Cards at the POS).

**Display Captured Signature on Cashier Display with Accept or Reject:** The parameter controls whether the signature capture is displayed on the cashier display. When set to “Yes”, the captured signature from the EFT terminal will be displayed on the cashier's screen. The cashier will either accept or reject the signature. When set to “No”, the captured signature will not display.

**Note:**

MTXEPS versions containing signature capture on the Pin Pad are required to utilize this feature. In addition, the store must have Signature Capture set up in MTXEPS for each tender that will utilize this feature (i.e. “O - Signature Capture” in the TAC Sequence). Please consult the MTXEPS User Guide for these settings.

**Transfer Saved Transactions to Finalizing Cashier:** For recalled transactions, set this parameter to “Yes” to report the sale transaction to the “finalizing” cashier. If set to “No”, the sale will report to the “saving” cashier.

**Compressed PLU Group Screen:** This parameter enables selecting the compressed mode for the PLU Groups screen. This will assist the cashier in selecting the correct item from a group list by presenting a longer item description.

**Retry Message if Scale is Not Stable:** This parameter allows the option of displaying a special message that allows polling the scale again without re-entering the PLU (if the scale is not ready or WinPOS has not received the weight from the scale).

**CC for Clearing Retry Scale Message:** Click the field selection arrow and choose the Control Check to display after clearing the Retry Scale Message. The default is “None”.

## E\_Ticket

The E\_Ticket feature allows Loyalty customers (member card holders) to get an electronic copy of their sales receipt by e-mail. The email receipts can be sent at the online buying time or in the End of Day procedure.

**E\_Ticket in System:** This parameter provides the option to activate the E\_Ticket in the system. (Note: To send member holders an E\_Ticket receipt, the parameter 'Member card number includes check digit must not be selected.)

**E\_Ticket Web Incoming/Outgoing Directory:** This field provides the path to the E\_Ticket Web Incoming/Out Directory (C:\E\_Ticket\...).

**E\_Ticket Tender Number:** This parameter indicates the Tender Type for tracking E\_Ticket transactions. Valid range is 0-9999.

**E\_Ticket Master POS Number:** This parameter identifies the virtual POS terminal designated for processing E\_Ticket transactions.

## Q-Buster

PocketOffice Q-Buster turns your iPADS into portable checkout lane scanners. At a convenient location in the store, shopping basket items are scanned into a suspended POS transaction under a temporarily issued Q-Buster card number or (if a loyalty program exists) the customer's Loyalty Card number. When the customer reaches the POS, the card is re-scanned to resume the transaction where it can be immediately totaled and tendered. With Q-Buster, a customer transaction can be initiated from either the iPad or a department POS.

**Q-Buster in System:** This parameter enables Q-Buster. If set to Yes, Q-Buster can be implemented.

**Use Member Card as Q-Buster Card:** This parameter enables the member cards to be used as a Q-Buster card. If set to No, a separate Q-Buster card is required to be scanned to initiate a Q-Buster transaction.

**Allow Q-Buster Transaction at POS:** This parameter controls whether Q-Buster transactions can be initiated from the POS terminal (in addition to the hand-held computer). If set to Yes, purchases at different department POS terminals can be placed

in a Q-Buster transaction so store purchases only need to be tendered once.

**CC for Max Q-Buster Amount:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check to display if the maximum Q-Buster transaction amount is exceeded when initiated from the POS terminal.

**Max Q-Buster Transaction Amount at POS:** This parameter specifies the maximum Q-Buster transaction dollar amount that can be initiated at the POS terminal.

## MTX EFT

The following parameters relate to the MicroTrax EFT interface and customer Pin Pad.

**Apply Idle-Locking Mode for Pin Pad:** If set to “Yes”, the POS application will instruct the Pin Pad to lock itself at any end of ticket and unlock itself only when a new ticket starts. This setting prevents a situation where a customer might leave their payment information on the Pin Pad by accident and it is used to tender the subsequent transaction.

**Customized EFT Message on Cashier Display:** This parameter controls whether the customer decline message for delayed card activation will display on the cashier display as well as the pin pad display. If this parameter is set to “Yes”, the POS application will echo customer pin pad messages to the cashier display in a high granularity level.

**Prompt for Member Card or Secondary ID at Pin Pad:** This parameter controls the first screen on the Pin Pad. When set to “Yes”, the Pin Pad will prompt for a member card on the first screen. If set to “No” the Pin Pad will have the first payment sequence screen as the first screen.

**Note:**

The “Member Card in System” parameter (located in the Store \ POST \ Operational \ Member Card \ Member Card folder) the must to be set “Yes” for this feature to be enabled.

**First Text Line on EFT Prompt (Prompt 1):** This parameter controls the text on the EFT Prompt. When the “Prompt for Member Card or Secondary ID at Pin Pad” parameter is set to “Yes”, this parameter will determine what text will be displayed on the Pin Pad's first line of text (i.e. “Swipe Member Card”). The parameter is limited to 20 characters.

**Note:**

If left blank and the “Second RETRY Text Line on EFT Prompt” parameter is blank, the text will display “Entry Unsuccessful” by default.

**Second Text Line on EFT Prompt (Prompt 2):** When the “Prompt for Member Card or Secondary ID at Pin Pad” parameter is set to “Yes”, this parameter will determine what text will be displayed on the Pin Pad's second line of text (i.e. “or Enter Phone #”). The parameter is limited to 20 characters.

**Note:**

If left blank and the “First RETRY Text Line on EFT Prompt” parameter is blank, the text will display “Try Again” by default.

**Allow Member Card Swipe/Secondary ID Entry at Pin Pad during Sales Mode:** This parameter controls secondary ID prompting. When set to “Yes”, the Pin Pad will prompt for Secondary ID/Member Card Swipe during Sales mode. If set to No, the prompt must be initiated by the cashier pressing the supported member card, frequent shopper, or secondary ID keyboard functions.

**First RETRY Text Line for EFT Prompt (Re-Prompt 1):** This parameter controls the retry text on the EFT Prompt. When the “Prompt for Member Card or Secondary ID at Pin Pad” parameter is set to “Yes”, this parameter will determine what text (i.e. “Entry Unsuccessful”) will be displayed on the Pin Pad's first line of text (in POS Sales Mode) after swipe/entry failed validation and customer can retry.

**Note:**

If left blank and the “First Text Line on EFT Prompt” parameter is also blank, the text will display “Enter Phone #” by default.

**Second RETRY Text Line for EFT Prompt (Re-Prompt 2):** This parameter controls the retry text on the EFT Prompt. When the “Prompt for Member Card or Secondary ID at Pin Pad”

parameter is set to “Yes”, this parameter will determine what text (i.e. “Try Again”) will be displayed on the Pin Pad’s second line of text (in POS Sales Mode) after swipe/entry failed validation and customer can retry.

**Note:**

If left blank and the “First Text Line on EFT Prompt” parameter is also blank, the text will display “Enter Phone #” by default.

**Use MTX Receipt Data:** When this parameter is set to Yes, the system will use MTX receipts for EFT approvals, balance inquiries, card activations (deactivations and recharges) and declines (and ISS45 templates will not be used). MTXEPS receipt data will be written to the Electronic Journal file so that it will be displayed as a text transaction.

**Note:**

MTXEPS WinEPS must be setup to require a receipt for the tender. EFT receipts (including decline receipts) will print only if the tender has the (“Z”) TAC setup in WinEPS under Terminal Configuration.

**Note:**

Buffered printing must be enabled for this functionality to work correctly. The General System Parameter “Buffer Printing” is located in the Store \ POST \ Presentation \ Receipt \ Buffer Printing folder.

## Biometric Identification

ISS45 supports PBT (Pay-By-Touch) biometric finger scanning as a tendering option. This solution allows a customer to initiate and tender a sales transaction with no physical documentation (i.e. loyalty card, tender, driver's license). In addition, ACH (Automated Clearing House) transactions can be handled through PBT.

ISS45 can also obtain customer birthdates and loyalty card numbers automatically from MicroTrax, in transactions where the finger scanning payment method is used. By implementing this feature customer transactions are expedited by bypassing birth date and loyalty card prompting. The TLOG will indicate if the media, loyalty card and/or birth date were obtained via PBT.

**Note:**

PBT data will not override the customer's loyalty card or birth date data if they are previously entered by the cashier within the transaction.

**Use Biometric Identification functionality:** This parameter defines whether the store uses fingerprint capture to access the customer's information for EFT payment, date of birth and/or loyalty card data. When set to Yes, the POS will poll the EFT interface for customer information.

**Display loyalty member name from Biometric Identification:**

When set to Yes, the member name returned from Biometric Identification will be displayed on the cashier display. This functionality is enabled when the “Retrieve loyalty information from Biometric Identification” parameter (below) is set to Yes.

**Retrieve DOB from Biometric Identification for Age**

**Verification:** When set to Yes, the birth date will be retrieved from Biometric Identification, if available. This functionality is enabled when the “Use Biometric Identification functionality” parameter (below) is set to Yes.

**Retrieve loyalty information from Biometric Identification:**

When set to Yes, the loyalty card number and member name will be retrieved from Biometric Identification, if available. This functionality is enabled when the “Use Biometric Identification functionality” parameter (above) is set to Yes.

## Front Office Parameters

### Alerts

System alerts notify office staff or management of technical problems, security violations, and other irregular or exceptional events on the POS terminals or Back Office servers. These parameters enable tracking of system alerts and define locations for displaying alerts.

**Show Alerts on MFS1:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on MFS1 server.

**Show Alerts on MFS2:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on MFS2 server.

**Show Alerts on LFS3:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS3 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS4:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS4 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS5:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS5 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS6:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS6 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS7:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS7 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS8:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS8 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS9:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS9 workstation.

**Show Alerts on LFS10:** The parameter provides the option of displaying alerts on LFS10 workstation.

**Alert in System:** This parameter enables the tracking of alerts on the system. If this parameter is not selected, no alerts will be created.

## End of Day

### General (sub-folder)

**Compare SQL to QDX During EOD:** This parameter provides the option during End of Day to check for errors in the databases, by comparing SQL to QDX tables. Options are 'None', 'Check Only' or 'Full'. When set to 'None', no checking will be performed during the EOD. When set to 'Check Only', the QDX tables will be compared to the SQL tables and any differences will be reported. When set to 'Full', the tables will be compared and rebuilt if any differences are found.

**Auto Declaration in End of Day:** This parameter provides the options to update Cashiers/POS declarations values for 'Auto Declaration' tenders during End of Day.

**24-Hours Store:** This parameter provides the option of specifying the store is a 24-hour store.

**Allow Changing of Trading Date, Next Trading Date, EOD**

**Type:** This parameter provides the option of allowing authorized users to change trading date, next trading date and EOD type.

**Pause EOD at the End of Critical Part:** This parameter provides the option of pausing the End of Day after the completion of the critical part. When set to Yes, the user will be prompted to press '*Continue*' once the critical part of the End of Day has completed. The pause allows user to monitor the End of Day during the critical phase.

**Automatic End of Day:** This parameter provides the option for the system to automatically run the End of Day procedure.

**Warning Message if Declarations not done:** This parameter provides the option to issue a warning message that declarations have not been done when running the End of Day. Parameter options are 'None', 'Warning Only' or 'Error: Stop End of Day'.

**Reset POS Counter During End-of-Day:** This parameter provides the option to reset transaction numbers on the POS terminals to zero with every End of Day. (Yes/No)

**Perform Checksum During End-of-Day:** This parameter provides the option to compare the PLU files in the POS terminals to the PLU file on MFS1, during the End of Day process. If differences are found, the POS terminals are updated after the End of Day has completed. This process is done in the background and does not interfere with the operation of the POSTs.

**Tax Report to Follow POS Report:** This parameter provides the option to print the Tax Report immediately after the POS Report (at the POS terminal) during the End of Day procedure. Reference parameter, *Don't Print POS Reports During End-of-Day*, below.

**Don't Print POS Reports During End-of-Day:** The parameter provides the option to not print POS Reports at the POS terminals, during the End of Day procedure. (Yes/No)

**Disallow Automatic End-of-Day Between (Start Time - 24 Hour Clock):** This parameter specifies the 'Start Time' (e.g., 8) to prohibit running an Automatic End of Day.

**Disallow Automatic End-of-Day Between (End Time - 24 Hour Clock):** This parameter specifies the 'End Time' (e.g., 20) to prohibit running an Automatic End of Day.

**Warning Message if Saved Tickets Found:** This parameter provides the option of issuing a warning message if saved tickets (suspended sales transactions) are found during the End-of-Day. Options are 'None', 'Warning Only' or 'Error: Stop End-of-Day'.

**Send Ticket by Email at End-of-Day:** This parameter provides the option of automatically emailing Loyalty customers (member card holders) a copy of their sales receipt during the End of Day process.

**Time Out for Interactive Part Message:** At the end of the interactive part of the End-of-Day, a message is displayed on the screen, indicating that this phase of the End-of-Day is complete. This parameter specifies the number of minutes after which the critical part of the End-of-Day will automatically start, when the referenced message is posted, but not acknowledged. Valid range is 0 to 999.

**End-of-Day Time Restriction (in Hours):** This parameter represents the number of hours since the last End-of-Day was performed. If another End-of-Day is attempted before this number of hours has passed since the last End-of-Day, a message will display, giving the user the opportunity to continue or abort the EOD request. Valid range is 0 to 24 hours.

**Allow Printed Report Copies at EOD (End-of-Day):** This parameter provides the option to allow printing of reports during the EOD (End-of-Day) process.

**Backup PLU and Promotion Tables before EOD Process:** This parameter provides the option to backup PLU and Promotion data as part of the End-of-Day process. When set to Yes, immediately following the critical part of the End-of-Day, an automatic procedure is invoked which writes the database backup.

**Build credit ASCII file during EOD:** This parameter specifies that a frequent shopper or member card ASCII transaction file should be created during EOD. This feature is used when a loyalty host data warehousing database is in use that is updated only by EOD and is not interactive to the store.

**Credit ASCII file name:** This parameter provides the option of setting the path and the name for the Credit ASCII file created during EOD. The path selected is added to the base path C:\PCMASTER\. (For example: SEQ\CREDIT.SEQ).

**Run Automatic EOD Immediately if Windows Logged Off:**

This parameter determines if the EOD may initiate without a user logged in. If set to "Yes", the End-of-Day process will start immediately (without waiting for V8TaskExe.exe) when Windows is logged off.

## Archive (sub-folder)

**Number of History Days for Daily PLU Sales:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store daily PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 300 represents 300 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Weeks for Week PLU Sales:** This parameter specifies the number of weeks to store weekly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 50 represents 50 weeks. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Months for Month PLU Sales:** This parameter specifies the number of months to store monthly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 12 represents 12 months. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Years for Year PLU Sales:** This parameter specifies the number of years to store yearly PLU Sales in SQL tables. For example, a value of 3 represents 3 years. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Shifts for Cashier/POS History Tables:**

This parameter specifies the number of shifts to store for

Cashier/POS History tables. For example, a value of 500 represents 500 Cashier/POS shifts. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for All Other History Tables:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store All Other History Tables in SQL tables. For example, a value of 300 represents 300 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for User Access Log:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the User Access Log in SQL tables. For example, a value of 250 represents 250 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for PLU Batch Table (Execute):** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the history for the PLU Batch Table (Execute). For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days of history. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for EJ (Electronic Journal):** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Electronic Journal. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for PLU Batch Table (Error):** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the history for the PLU Batch Table (Error). For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Days for Rep Archive:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Report Archive. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**MFS1 Backup Directory:** This field provides the path to the MFS1 Backup Directory (e.g., D:\MSSQL7\BACKUP).

**MFS2 Backup Directory:** This field provides the path to the MFS2 Backup Directory (e.g., D:\Backup).

**Number of History Days for Basket Analysis History Tables:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the Basket Analysis History Table. This table is used to generate the Basket Analysis Report, which lists the number of customer sales orders that were processed at a user-defined specified sales volume range. Valid number of days to store this information is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days for Alert Table:** This parameter specifies the number of days to store the System Alert Table. For example, a value of 350 represents 350 days. The valid range is 0 to 999.

**Number of History Days of Audit Query:** This parameter specifies the number of days to keep Audit Query detail in the database. The valid range is 1 to 30 (with a default of 7 days).

**Number of History Weeks for Custom Weekly Accounting Tables:** This parameter controls the number of history weeks to keep for the Staging and Manual Entry tables associated with the Custom Weekly Accounting report. Weeks will be deleted in their entirety. Tables are cleared on the day specified in the store's "End of Week's Day" parameter.

**Number of History Days for EBT WIC Files and Data:** This parameter defines the number of history days to be retained in SQL for EBT WIC transactions and the number of days to retain files in the POSWare\Office\EBT\_WIC subdirectories. For optimal SQL performance, 90 days or less is recommended.

## Period (sub-folder)

**End of Week's Day:** This parameter specifies the day of the week to perform the *End of Week* process. The default day is Sunday.

**End of Year's Month:** This parameter specifies the month of the year to process the *End of Year* totals. The default date is December 31.

**End of Year's Day:** This parameter specifies the day of the month to process the *End of Year* totals. The range is 1 to 31.

**End of Month Definitions:** The multi-parameter specifies the day in each month on which *End of Month* totals will be processed. The default date is the last calendar date of each month.

**Path for PLU movement extract:** This parameter defines the path for the PLU Extract data to be stored for host retrieval.

## ASCII Transaction File (sub-folder)

**Convert Transaction File to ASCII during EOD:** The parameter provides the option of converting the Transaction File (Electronic Journal) to an ASCII file during the End-of-Day procedure. This file is created in addition to the regular transaction file.

**Output File Path:** This field provides the path to the Output ASCII file (e.g., C:\PCMASTER\TMP\ASCII\TR.TXT).

**Sort by POS Number:** This parameter provides the option to sort the output ASCII file by POS number.

**Field Delimiter:** This parameter specifies the field delimiter of the output ASCII file. Options are None, Comma or Tab.

**Include Blank Lines for Un-Supported OPCODES:** This parameter provides the option including blank lines for un-supported OPCODES in the ASCII file.

## PLU and Batch

### PLU Options

#### Validation (sub-folder)

**Ignore the validation of PLU Price Lists:** This parameter monitors the option to substitute a Price List for a PLU. When this parameter is set to No, the PLU must be validated within the PLU file before the Price List is used. If this parameter is set to Yes, no validation occurs.

**Force Short and Long Description to Match:** The parameter provides the option to force the POST Description (short) and Item Description (Long) fields in the PLU record to always match. If this parameter is set to Yes, any type of maintenance to existing items, will automatically update the Item Description with the POST Description. (Yes/No)

**Remove Validation of Existence for Unchanged Properties:** If this parameter is set to "Yes", existence of the following linked objects will be verified only if the link is changed on the PLU Item: Department, Coupon, Subdepartment, Tare Weight, Discount, Return Code, POS Item Message, DEA Group and Price Change Reason.

**Prohibit Manual Changes to Non-Merchandise Flag:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit manual changes to the 'Non-Merchandise' flag in PLU Maintenance and PLU Batch Maintenance at the store. When set to Yes, the 'Non-merchandise' flag will be allowed to be change only from host batches.

**Set "Manual Price" on if Item Price is 0:** If the parameter, *Zero Price PLU Allowed*, is selected, this parameter provides the

option to allow cashiers to manually enter a price. When this parameter is set to Yes, the cashier will be prompted to enter the item's price when a zero-priced item is scanned or key-entered.

**Prohibit Manual Changes to “Negative Entry” flag in PLU**

**Maintenance:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit manual changes to the 'Negative Entry' flag in PLU Maintenance.

**Note:**

If the *Negative Entry* flag is checked, you may not set a coupon flag (store, bonus, or vendor) at the store. The system displays an error message 'Not allowed, negative entry flag set'. If a coupon flag is already checked, you may not set the negative entry parameters. The system displays an error message 'Not allowed, coupon flag set'.

**PLU Follow Department Flags as Default:** This parameter provides the option to assign to a new PLU the default flags of the selected department.

**PLU must have a Valid Check Digit:** This parameter provides the option to require the PLU numbers must have a valid check digit.

**Zero Price PLU Allowed:** This parameter provides the option to allow zero-priced items in PLU Maintenance (i.e., users can enter items with no price). UPC2 items are allowed to be zero-priced regardless of this parameter.

**Update All Mix and Match Groups if One PLU Changed:** This parameter provides the option of updating the price and quantity of all items with similar Mix and Match codes, if changing the price and quantity of one of the items. When set to Yes, all items with similar Mix and Match codes will be updated when changing the price or quantity of one of the items. When set to No, each price must be individually changed.

## Internal Code (sub-folder)

**Internal Number must have a Valid Check Digit:** This parameter provides the option of validating the check digit on Internal Code (item number).

**Update ALL Items Linked to Internal Code if One PLU Changed:** If the parameter *Internal Code in System* (see below) is selected, this parameter provides the option of updating ALL PLU items linked with the same internal code, when one PLU is changed. Details that are affected are department, price and frequent shopper discount amount.

**Internal Code (Item Number) in System:** This parameter provides the option to enable the Internal Code feature in the system. Internal codes are linked to the PLU number. When set to Yes, users can link multiple PLU items to the same internal code. For example, different flavors of Jell-O can be linked to the same internal code. If selected, any type of maintenance to existing items will require the internal code number to be added to the PLU record.

**CDV Scheme for PLU Internal Number:** If the parameter *Internal Number must have a Valid Check Digit* is selected, this parameter specifies the check digit scheme for the internal code. The range is 0 to 10.

## Subdepartment (sub-folder)

**PLU must be Linked to Subdepartment:** This parameter provides the option to require that all PLU items be linked to a sub-department, as well as a department. When set to Yes, any type of maintenance to existing items will require the sub-department number to be added to the PLU record.

**Subdepartment in the System:** This parameter provides the option to enable the Sub-department feature in the system.

## Change Price Reason (sub-folder)

### **Restrict Maintenance for Change Price Reason Codes**

**Range:** The PLU reason codes feature enables you create a list of codes that allow you to state the reason for making a change to a PLU (e.g., item on sale, vendor price increase, discontinue item, etc.). Once you build up a list of reasons, you can use them in PLU Maintenance any time you make a change to a PLU. This parameter allows you to restrict in-store maintenance to a specified range price change reason codes. These price change reason codes can be used but will be 'read-only' and can only be modified by authorized personnel. This is a multiple parameter with a valid range of 0 to 9999.

## Discount Prohibit (sub-folder)

**Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Sale:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on sale. If this parameter is set to Yes, when a sales is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

**Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Promotion:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on promotion. If this parameter is set to Yes, when a promotion is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

**Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Reduction:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on Reduction. If this parameter is set to Yes, when

a reduction is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

**Set Discount Prohibit Flag to {V} if Item is on Offer:** This parameter provides the option to prohibit linking discounts to items that are on Offer. If this parameter is set to Yes, when an offer is defined for an item, the Discount Prohibit flag in the PLU record is automatically checked. When the item returns to its original status, the Discount Prohibit flag is set back to its original setting.

## Auditing (sub-folder)

**Audit Levels:** This parameter provides the option to track and log changes made to PLU details. Options are:

- No Audit
- Full Audit – All details logged
- Only Headers – Only basic details logged

**PLU Items Data Tracking:** This parameter provides the option to track items when they are updated or modified.

## PLU Deletion (sub-folder)

These parameters relate to the Delayed PLU Deletion feature that enables users to flag PLU items for deletion and retain them on the PLU file for several days before they are actually deleted.

**Delete PLU by Local and Host:** This parameter provides the option to enable the Delayed PLU Deletion feature in the system.

**Zero Sales Days Before Actual PLU Local Deletion:** This parameter specifies the number of days with no sales that must pass, before a locally created PLU deletion (through PLU

Maintenance or Local PLU Batch File) will actually be deleted.  
(Range 0 to 999)

**Zero Sales Days Before Actual PLU Host Deletion:** This parameter specifies the number of days with no sales that must pass, before a host initiated PLU deletion (PLU Batch) will actually be deleted. (Range 0 to 999)

**Number of Days After Deletion Before Actual Deletion, Regardless of Sales:** This parameter specifies the number of days that must pass before deleting the PLU item, regardless of the number of zero sales days. (Range 0 to 999)

## PLU Sales Log (sub-folder)

**PLU Sales Log Flag:** If this parameter is set to Yes, when a PLU is sold (when the TreatPluSales stored procedure is called), ISS45 will also call the TreatPluSalesLog stored procedure, which updates the PLU\_SALES\_LOG table.

**PLU Sales Log Clean:** This parameter holds the number of sales to hold Sales Log data before clearing the table.

## Price Lists (sub-folder)

**PLU Price Lists in System:** This parameter enables the *ISS45* PLU Price Lists in the system. This feature enables the user to maintain more than one price per item. The items prices are saved per Price List.

## Batch Options

**PC Number to Activate Batch Files by Date/Time:** The parameter specifies the PC number, which should trigger date and time-activated batches. The range is 0 to 999.

**Use OPCODE #1 (New) as INSERT/UPDATE Code (Host Files):** This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch file. If this parameter is set to Yes, when processing a record with Code #1 (New) in a batch file, the system will insert this record as a new PLU, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. When this parameter is set to No, and the PLU exists, an error message will be generated.

**Use OPCODE #2 (Update) as INSERT/UPDATE Code (Host Files):** This parameter refers to the Batch Code field in the Host Batch. If this parameter is set to Yes, when processing a record with Code #2 (Update) in a batch file, the system will insert as a new PLU if the item does not exist, or update an existing PLU if the PLU number exists. When this parameter is set to No, and the PLU does not exist, an error message will be generated.

**Auto Execute Full Item Load:** This parameter refers to loading a full item file. When set to Yes, a full item load executes automatically. When set to No, the item file load must be executed manually.

**Determine the Maximum Amount of Items in a Local Batch:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of items in a local batch (in-store batch). When creating a local batch and if the number of items in a batch exceeds this parameter, a warning message will appear, indicating that the maximum number of items allowed in a local batch has been reached. No additional items will be added to the batch. The range is 0 to 99999999.

**Go to Price Field After Item Number In PLU Batches:** This parameter provides the option to access the price field in the Item record, immediately after entering the PLU number in PLU Batch Maintenance. When set to yes, the user will access the price field immediately after keying in the PLU number, versus having to tab through other fields in the item record to get to the price field.

**Compare PLU Batch Name to Batch Header:** This parameter provides the option of validating the PLU Batch Name to the Batch Header. When set to Yes and if the PLU Batch Name and Batch Header do not match, the batch will be rejected and moved

to a folder for rejected batches. An event will also be written to the Event Viewer Application Log.

**Compare General Batch Name to Batch Header:** This parameter provides the option of validating the General Batch Name to the Batch Header. When set to Yes and if the General Batch Name and Batch Header do not match, the batch will be rejected and moved to a folder for rejected batches (\Program Files\POSware\Office\Import rejected folder). An event will also be written to the Event Viewer Application Log.

**Use Fast PLU Batch execution:** This parameter enables the ability to ignore the many PLU validation processes that are run against an item when a batch is executed in order to speed processing time.

## Operation

### **Erase Criteria when Returning from PLU Form to PLU Grid:**

This parameter provides the option to clear PLUS previously loaded by the filter, after inserting a new PLU. When set to Yes, after inserting a new PLU, any PLUs previously loaded into the PLU by the filter option will be cleared. Only the new PLU will appear on the list.

**Do not Prompt for Filter:** This parameter provides the option to launch the PLU Item Selector load filter utility when PLU Maintenance is selected. The PLU Item Selector allows the user to search and find PLU items based on selected item criteria (e.g., department number or mix & match code), for quick and easy access to ranges of PLU items for file maintenance. When this parameter is set to Yes, the PLU Item Selector filter is called manually.

**Allow Ordering of PLU Selection Criteria:** The PLU Selection Criteria function enables you to easily select PLUs from predefined groups in order to create batches. You can select items based on any of the fields that are enabled in the PLU Batch Item Maintenance function. When set to Yes, the *Allow*

*Ordering of PLU Selection Criteria* parameter enables the button option to customize the order in which these fields display.

**Perform Expansion of PLU Input of 6 or 7 Digits:** This parameter provides the option of automatically expanding zero-suppressed PLU items (PLU items with 6 or 7 digits). When set to Yes, the system will automatically expand the zero-suppressed PLU number to a standard 10 or 11 digit UPC number, when creating and storing the item in the Item File. Items (with 6 or 7 digits) key-entered at the POS terminal will automatically expanded to the standard 10 or 11 digit UPC number.

## Reports

### Customer and Item Counts

**Bottle Deposits and Refunds do not Affect Item Count**

**Statistics:** This parameter provides the option for not including bottle deposits and refunds in Item Count statistics. (Yes/No)

**Non-Merchandise Items do not Affect Item Count Statistics:**

This parameter provides the option for not including non-merchandise items in Item Count statistics. (Yes/No)

**Orders with ONLY Bottle Deposits/Refunds or Non-Merchandise Departments do not Affect Customer Count:**

This parameter provide the option for not including 'Bottle Refunds' and 'Non-Merchandising' ONLY orders in Customer Count. (Yes/No)

**Orders with only Coupons do not Affect Customer Count:**

This parameter provides the option of not including 'Coupon Only' orders in customer count. (Yes/No)

**EJ (Electronic Journal) Header Text:** This parameter provides the option to define a header (free-form text field) that displays and prints on sales transactions log in the Electronic Journal.

## Itemized Check Report

**Check Total by Group:** The Itemized Check Report by Cashier/POS prints details of payments received by check, on a check-by-check basis. This parameter allows you to optionally print a Check Batch Total after every 'X' number of checks on the report. If this parameter is set to No, the report will list checks sequentially for each Cashier/POS, with a report total at the end of all the checks (per Cashier/POS).

If this parameter is set to Yes, in addition to the above totals, you will get a Check Batch Total, every 'X' checks (Group 1) and then a Final Batch Total at the end, for the last 'Y' number of checks (Group 2).

**Group 1: Number of Checks in Total:** If the *Check Total by Group* parameter is selected, this parameter specifies the number of checks ('X') for the Check Batch Totals on the Itemized Check Report.

**Group 2: Number of Checks in Total:** If the *Check Total by Group* parameter is selected, this parameter specifies the number of checks for the number of checks ('Y') for the Final Batch Total on the Itemized Check Report.

## Productivity and Performance

**Maximum Idle Time Multiplier:** The idle time used in calculating cashier effectiveness can be multiplied by the number specified in this parameter.

**Express Orders Size (Number of Items):** This parameter provides the option to specify the size of Express Orders (number of items) for productivity and performance reporting. The range of Express Order size is 0 to 99.

**Checker Number Range to be Used for Checker Effectiveness Report:** This parameter provides the option to

specify a range (From – To Values) of checker numbers to be tracked in the Checker Effectiveness Report. Checker numbers outside of the range will not appear on this report.

**Display Parameter Option to Hide Checker Names On Checker Effectiveness Report from On-Line Reports Screen:**

This parameter provides the option to hide checker names on the Checker Effective Report. When set to Yes, the user will have option to hide checker names when displaying and printing the report.

## Electronic Journal

**Font Size for EJ Printer:** The parameter specifies the font size for printing the Electronic Journal. The font size range is from 4 to 15.

**Set Printer for EJ:** This parameter defines the printer for the Electronic Journal. The choices are either Default Printer or Second Printer.

## VAT Report

**Department Weekly Budget is VAT Exclusive:** This parameter provides the option to exclude VAT (value added tax) taxes from department sales totals on the Department Weekly Budget Report. (VAT taxes are not used in United States.)

## Tender Report

**Separate Charge from Tenders List at Reports:** This parameter provides the option to separate charges from other tenders listed on reports.

## PLU Sales by Location Report

**PLU Sales by Location in System:** Set this parameter to “Yes” to enable the PLU Sales by Location Report on the system.

## PLU Sales Report

**Allow Printing Only Active Items:** This parameter provides the option of printing only active items on the PLU Sales Report. When set to Yes, a ‘Print Only Active Items’ check box will display on the PLU Report screen, providing the option to print only active items or all items on the PLU Sales Report. (Note: An active item is any item that has a sales value greater than zero for the selected reporting period on the PLU Sales Report.)

## Weekly Business Report

**During EOD Report, Use the First and Last Day of the Week from System Parameter:** This parameter determines the range of dates to include in the Weekly Business Report (when the full week report is requested). If this parameter is set to “Yes”, the End of Week’s Day parameter will be used when generating the Weekly Business Report. If disabled, the end of week will be the End of Day processing date.

## Weekly Accounting Report

**Finalizing Option for the Custom Weekly Accounting Reports:** This parameter sets the finalizing option for the working day’s report totals (for purposes of CWA Reporting). If set to 'Manual', the user may finalize the CWA daily tables at any time using the Finalize button, or if the previous working date’s tables have not been finalized, they will be finalized automatically.

at the next EOD. If set to "EOD", ISS45 will finalize the current working date's daily tables during end-of-day processing.

## Cashier/POS Over\Short Report

**Cashier / POS Over \ Short Report Type:** This parameter controls whether the Cashier/POS Over\Short Report will be by SHIFT or by DAY.

## V8 Front Office as Host

**This Computer is a General Batches Host:** This parameter enables the system to allow creating general promotion batches, which can be distributed to other stores within the chain.

**Promotions are not Allowed to be Created in Range From To:** To prevent creating duplicate promotions numbers, this parameter specifies the range (From Value and To Value) of promotion numbers reserved for Host.

## System

**AR in System:** This parameter enables the *ISS45* Accounts Receivable application in the system. This application makes available customer account charges or payments at the terminal and credit limit control at the account level. The AR application must be installed for this feature to work.

**Restrict the Number of Front Office Application Open Instances:** This parameter specifies the maximum number of active open *ISS45* Front Office Applications allowed at any given point in time. The system will support up to 5 open windows of the Front Office Application.

**SysFont:** This parameter (if set to “Yes”) is used to set the font on the Language Utilities forms to Arial if the country selected is Czech, Slovakia, Poland, or Hungary. If the country selected is Other, the font should be MS Sans Serif. (Not for use in the United States).

**Timeout to Log-Off:** This parameter specifies the number of minutes after which the back office application will be automatically terminated if the user did not move the mouse or press any key in the active window. Before logoff, the user will have 10 seconds to prevent this automatic logoff. The Auto-logoff will take the user into a new session of the back office application. The valid range is 0 to 60 minutes.

**Disable/Enable Mode in System:** This parameter provides the option to disable selected menu parameters when setting up new users. If disabled, the menu selection will not be displayed. This option is used for security purposes and for simplifying menu screens.

**Timeout to Log-Off:** This parameter specifies the number of minutes after which the back office application will be automatically terminated if the user did not move the mouse or press any key in the active window. Before logoff, the user will have 10 seconds to prevent this automatic logoff. The Auto-logoff will take the user into a new session of the back office application. The valid range is 0 to 60 minutes.

**Log Detail Level:** This parameter controls the level of detail (normal, medium or high) in log files produced by the Front Office system.

## Central Data Management

**CDM Mode:** This parameter is reserved for future use.

**Enable “Charge Only” During Export:** This parameter is reserved for future use.

## Security

**Password Change Every XX Days:** This parameter provides the option to require the Front Office user to change the password after XX days. If this parameter is set to 0, the application will not prompt the user to change the password. If this parameter is set to a value other than 0, the user will be required to change the password after XX days. The new password has to differ from the old password. The valid range of days is 0 to 999.

**Minimum Number of Characters for Cashier Password:** This parameter provides the minimum number of characters the POS application will require the cashier to enter when setting the password at the terminal.

**Mask Reset Password:** This parameter controls whether to mask the password entry field (with asterisks) at the POS.

## Object Security

**Enable PLU Object Security:** This parameter controls whether to enable the capability to block PLU operations (update / insert / delete) of items through object security functionality. (See page 1-151).

## Minimum Disk Space Drive

**MFS1, Drive C (Megabytes):** This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS1, Drive C, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

**MFS1, Drive D (Megabytes):** This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS1, Drive D, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

**MFS2, Drive C (Megabytes):** This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS2, Drive C, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

**MFS2, Drive D (Megabytes):** This parameter specifies the minimum amount of free space required on MFS2, Drive D, in megabytes. When the disk space on this drive is less than this amount, a warning message displays.

## Cashier

### **Cashier Maintenance Screen to Exclude Personal**

**Information:** This parameter provides the option to exclude personal information from displaying on the Cashier Maintenance screens, located on the Front Office menu. When set to Yes, only the Employee ID and Employee Name will be displayed.

## ASP

These parameters pertain to the *ISS45* reporting module, which allows retailers to view reports containing sale data collected from their stores over the web, through a secure Internet connection.

Sales data is transmitted and stored on the Connected Services server farm in Dallas. Retailers can view their reports at any time from any place that has an Internet connection.

**ASP in System:** This parameter enables the execution of the appropriate software programs during the End-of-Day process, which creates the data and reports export, for transmission to the server farm.

**ASP Reports Directory:** This field provides the path to the directory where the export files are stored on MFS1. The location

for these files is C:\Program Files\Posware\Office\Export\ASP\directory.

**ASP Flag File:** This parameter defines the name of the ASP Flag File. Once the export files have been created, the application creates a flag file, which serves as an indicator that all the files are ready to be exported to the server farm. (ASP Flag File name should be ASPflg.\$\$\$.)

## Housekeeping

### **Number of Days to Wait Before Deleting Member**

**Promotions:** This parameter provides the option of indicating the number of days to wait before deleting expired Member Promotions.

### **Number of Days to Wait Before Deleting General Batches:**

This parameter provides the option of indicating the number of days to wait before deleting expired (applied) general batches.

### **Number of Days to Wait Before Deleting Single Promotions:**

This parameter provides the option of indicating the number of days to wait before deleting expired single promotions.

## Common Bookkeeping

**Bookkeeping in System:** This parameter enables the option of using functionality around Sellable Media.

**Bookkeeping File Path:** This parameter contains the file path used for Sellable media maintenance files if supported by host.

**Bookkeeping File Name:** This parameter specifies the file name used for Sellable media maintenance files if supported by host.

**Bookkeeping Minimum Tender ID:** This parameter specifies the minimum tender ID allowed for Sellable Media tenders.

**Bookkeeping Error Path:** This parameter provides the option of setting the path for storing error files when hosting Sellable Media via host.

## Electronic Journal

Access MFS1 transaction files when using EJ on LFS: This parameter enables the Electronic Journal (when running on a workstation) to access transaction data on the master file server.

## Promotions

### Single\Multi Promotions (sub-folder)

**Flag to Find First Available ID for Single Item Promotion:**

This parameter enables the option of having the next available promotion ID automatically assigned when creating new single-item promotions.

## General

**Allow Customer Accounts Maintenance:** This parameter enables Customer Accounts Maintenance within ISS45.

## Table Extracts

**Path for Table Extracts:** This parameter enables the option of selecting the path for the table extracts. If no value is set for this parameter, the extracts will be created in the default Office\Export directory

## POS Units and Measures

**Decimal Point Position (0-2):** This parameter defines the position of the decimal point (0-2) when weight is calculated on the scale. This number indicates the number of digits to the right of the decimal point.

**Pounds or Kilograms Weight:** This parameter specifies the unit of measure to be used by the POS scale: pounds or kilograms.

## Programmable Barcodes

The Programmable Barcode Option enables the user to define an item code (UPC Number System) for variable price or variable weight items. The first two digits of the PLU item number may be used to represent an item price or a weight.

For example, PLU items whose numbers begin with the digits 02 are sold for \$ 2.99 (e.g., pre-packaged hot dogs); items whose numbers begin with 04 weigh 1 pound (e.g., pre-packaged tomatoes). This is called a 'variable price/weight' code. The price/weight codes are fixed by the system, and they can be used as required.

The codes 02, 04, 99, 20 through 29, and 971 are available for variable price or weight items. In order to use any of these codes for PLU items, the parameters listed below have to be defined.

**Omit Qty Use for Non Weighted UPC2 Items:** This parameter controls whether the QTY key can be used on non-weighted UPC2-type items.

### Starting Digit XX (sub-folder):

These parameters apply to Item Codes **02**, **04**, **99**, **20** through **29**, and **971**.

**Code in Use:** Select (Yes or No) whether to enable the parameter settings for items containing these starting digits.

**PCDV Required:** This parameter provides the option of specifying that a price check digit is required. When set to Yes, price check digit verification is required.

**Price [ ] or Weight [x]:** This parameter defines the embedded amount in the barcode as weight or price. When set to Yes, the amount is weight. When set to No, the amount is price.

**Digits in Price:** This parameter specifies the greatest number of digits in the UPC price or weight.

**Decimal Places:** This parameter specifies the number of decimal places in the price or weight.

## Fuel Parameters

**Stand-Alone Fuel Front Office:** This parameter specifies that the fuel system is a stand-alone system versus a fuel system integrated with a MFS.

**Grade and PLU pricing link rules:** This parameter establishes the rule for updating grade and PLU information. Select *Grade Updates PLU*, to perform fuel price maintenance through the Grades Maintenance function. Select *PLU Updates Grade*, to update fuel prices through PLU Maintenance.

**Fuel Measurement Print Characters:** This parameter defines the text that will print next to the volume on the customer receipt for fuel transactions. When this parameter is blank, "gal" will print on the receipt.

**Fuel in the System:** This parameter provides the option to enable fuel in the system. (Yes/No)

**Maximum Dollar for Pre-Pay:** This parameter specifies the maximum dollar amount acceptable for pre-pay fuel transactions.

**PFS Number:** This parameter specifies the Petrol File Server number. The range is 0 to 999.

**Pump Test Tank Number Flag:** This parameter identifies the POS number of the Fuel Pump File Server.

**Pre-Pay Department Code:** This parameter identifies the appropriate department to assign Pre-pay transactions.

**External Device Number:** Currently, this parameter is used to indicate that system (pump) transactions are actually generated by PumpServ, and NOT a POS terminal. This option must have an entry other than 0 (zero). In the future there will be options to

have more than one external device connected. Valid range 0 to 999.

**Uncollected Change Department:** This parameter identifies the department number that should be used to track change due to a customer from a prepay transaction but the customer did not retrieve the change after pumping.

**Use DCOM to Connect to PumSRV (Default is to use TCPCOM):** This parameter is used to define the protocol used to communicate with PumpSrv.

## Drive Off

**Drive Off Car Make Flag:** This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Make' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

**Drive Off Car Color Flag:** This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Color' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

**Drive Off Plate Number Flag:** This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Plate' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

**Drive Off Year Flag:** This parameter provides the option to display an 'Enter Model' prompt on the POS terminal when a drive-off has occurred. (Yes/No)

## Technical Parameters

**Eldat on System:** This parameter enables the Eldat shelf-edge labels on the system.

**Number of Months to Keep Packages History:** This parameter is related to Code Distribution, the application that automatically distributes and performs software upgrades to the POS terminals. This parameter specifies the number of months after which a software upgrade package will be deleted from the 'Done' or

'Rejected' folder on the system. (A Software Upgrade Package is moved to 'Done' after upgrade is completed.) Valid range is 3 to 36 months. The default is 3 months.

**OTP Timeout:** Use this parameter to define the maximum amount of time (in seconds) the POS will wait for a response from the OTP loyalty server.

**Display OTP Cust Message:** Use this parameter to allow messages to be displayed when a loyalty server sends the applicable message number.

**ESL Extract File Name:** This parameter enables the option to define the name of the file to be extracted for the Unit Price ESL application. The root folder for this file is C:\PCMaster\SEQ.

**V7 API Calls Update SQL:** This parameter provides the option of updating both QDX and SQL databases when third party applications are used. When set to Yes, both databases will be updated.

**PC to Use as PCCS Server:** This parameter specifies the PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) to be used as the PCCS communication server.

**Host CCMS (Club Card Maintenance Server) Type:** This parameter specifies the host data warehousing service. Options are None, Corema, Frys VIP Club, OEM, OTP or MobileLime.

**Local CCMS (Club Card Maintenance Server) Type:** This parameter specifies the local Club Card Maintenance Server type. Options are None, Corema, Frys VIP Club, OEM, OTP or MobileLime.

**PC to Use as CCMS Server:** This parameter specifies the primary PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) through which the two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled.

**2nd PC to use as CCMS Server:** This parameter specifies the PC (for example, MFS1, MFS2, or LFS3) through which the two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled, in the event that the primary server is busy or unavailable.

**Port Number:** This parameter specifies the logical port number that opens the communications socket with the CCMS server.

**CCMS Alias in HOSTS File:** This parameter specifies a text description of the PC server. This alias can be retrieved from the HOST file. The alias, together with the PC's IP address, are stored in the HOST file.

## Electronic Payments

**Response Code (1-9):** These parameters hold the control checks to issue for Electronic Payment response codes (1 through 9).

### StoreLine EPS (sub-folder)

**CC for Overrideable Decline:** This parameter provides the option of selecting the Control Check required when overriding a StoreLine EPS payment decline (e.g., Exceeds Limit).

**StoreLine EPS Payment Provider:** The parameter defines the StoreLine EPS Payment Provider. Payment provider options are None, PLD for Ingenico, MTX for Hypercom, KC for Kincaid or EPS for Concord.

**Auth File Directory on the Server:** This field provides the path to the directory where the authorization files (xxx.Auth.dat and xxxSNF.dat files) are stored. The recommended location for these files is C:\PaymentMaster\.

**Capture EBT GEN Number for Manual Account Entry:** This parameter provides the option to capture EBT GEN Number for manual account entry. This parameter must be set to Yes.

**Allow Off-line Gift Card Activation:** Use this parameter if Gift Card Activation is allowed when offline with to EFT Host.

**Gift Card Activation Tender:** Use this field to define the tender to be use for Gift Card Activation for tracking purposes.

**POS timeout for ISS45 integrated payments:** This parameter provides the option of setting a timeout (5 to 90 seconds) for the POS when working with ISS45 Integrated Payments.

## General Parameters

**IP Address to Connect:** This parameter specifies the IP address of the EFT Controller. (Reserved for Finland use only.)

**Port Number to Use:** This parameter specifies the TCP/IP port of the EFT Controller. Valid range 0 to 9999. (Reserved for Finland use only.)

**Timeout (Mili Seconds):** This parameter specifies the timeout in milli-seconds for the communication link between the EFT controller and MFS1. The recommended value is 60 milli-seconds. Valid range is 0 to 9999. (Reserved for Finland use only.)

## Store Information

**Store Name:** This parameter specifies the Store Name (up to 28 characters). This name displays on all screens and reports.

**Store Number:** This parameter specifies the Store Number (range 0 to 60000). This number displays on screens and reports.

**Division Number:** This parameter provides the option to specify a Division Number (range 0 to 9999), for informational purposes.

**Store Address:** This parameter provides the option to enter the store address (up to 5 line of text), for informational purposes.

**Store VAT Number:** This parameter provides the option to specify a Store VAT Number for informational purposes.

**Manager Name:** This parameter provides the option to enter a manager's name for informational purposes.

**Store Telephone:** This parameter provides the option to enter a store telephone number for informational purposes.

**Country:** This parameter provides the option to select the country from a dropdown list for informational purposes.

## Retalix Pocket Office

Remote HHC's (Hand-Held Computers) running Retalix Pocket Office (RPO) may receive the following control check requests and alerts from the POS:

- Control Checks (Ask Yes/No, Manager\Supervisor Key Lock Required, Warnings)
- Alerts (i.e. Cash Limit Exceeded, Printer Error, OLA Offline, etc.)
- Manual Cashier Requests (from pre-defined keys at the POS)

Manager authorization and selected control checks action responses can be set to:

- Inform the RPO User Only — display on the HCC but do not allow approval from the HHC. Resolution must occur at the POS.
- Allow Approval — display on the HCC and allow approval from the HHC. Resolution may occur either from the HHC or the POS.
- Not appear on the HHC

**Action for Keyboard Functions:** This parameter defines how Manager \ Supervisor Authorization requests triggered by keyboard functions are handled from RPO. Click the field's selection arrow and choose: None, Info Only or Allow Approval.

**Show Only Alerts From the Last ...Hours:** The RMA (Remote Manager Authorization) module will display only unresolved alerts that were generated in the last X hours that are defined in this parameter.

**RMA Cashier Notification in System:** This parameter defines whether the POS is to display icons indicating the status of the messages sent to Retailix Pocket Office.

**Cashier Notification Icon Time Limit:** This parameter defines the number of minutes before removing a User Request Cashier Notification Icon from the POS display.

# Object Security Maintenance

Object Security Maintenance provides the ability to have certain PLU's protected from being deleted or modified at the local level through ISS45's PLU Maintenance, Fast PLU Maintenance, PLU Batches or Fast PLU Batches functionality.

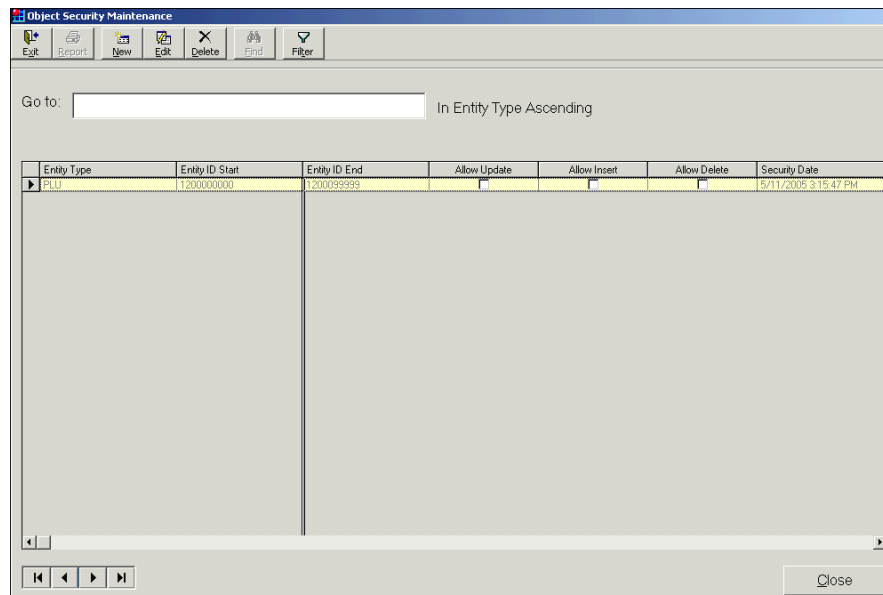
**Note:**

Host batches will still allow these selected PLUs to be modified.

**Note:**

The General System Parameter "Enable PLU Object in System" (located in the Store \ Front Office \ System \ Object Security folder) must be set to "Yes" to use this feature.

- **To protect a range of PLUs from being deleted or modified**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support and then Code Distribution Management Parameters. The Code Distribution Management Parameters window appears.



- 2 Click *New*. The Object Security – Add or Update Items screen appears.

Object Security - Add or Update Items

Entity Type: 1 - PLU

Entity ID Range:

From:

To:

Security Permissions

Allow Update

Allow Insert

Allow Delete

Navigation: [Previous] [Next] [Home] [End]

Buttons: OK Cancel Apply

- 3 In the Entity ID Range From and Start fields, enter the beginning and ending range of the PLUs you wish to protect.
- 4 If desired, check the security permissions you wish to allow for this range (Update, Insert and/or Delete).
- 5 When finished, click *OK* or *Apply*.

# 2

## POS Setup

*This chapter covers the options you need to set up the POS terminals.*

*There are setups for POS terminal hardware configuration as well as functionality.*

### *In this chapter:*

**POS Configuration,**  
page 2-3

**POS Parameters,**  
page 2-29

**Card Program, page 2-29**

**Member Card &  
Promotions, page 2-32**

**Trading Stamps,**  
page 2-33

**Coupons Parameters,**  
page 2-35

**Restricted Sales  
Options, page 2-41**

**POS Receipt Setup,**  
page 2-42

**POS Keyboards,**  
page 2-48

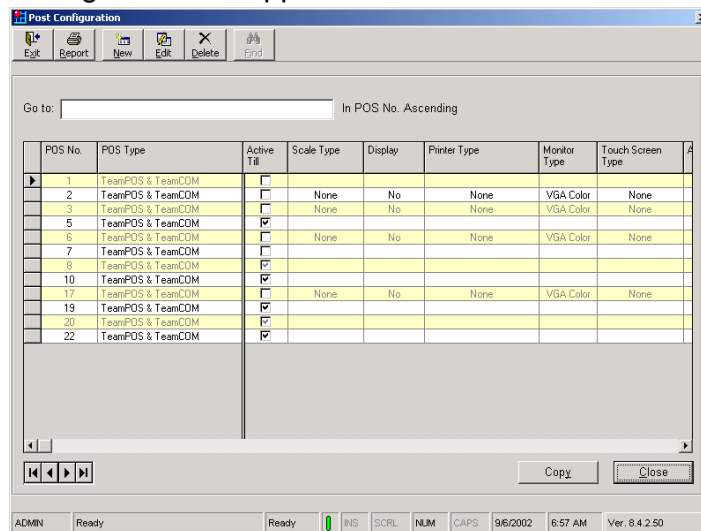


# POS Configuration

Use the POS Configuration options to set up and define a POS terminal, keyboard layout, receipt printing and peripheral equipment connection.

➤ **To define or edit a POS terminal configuration**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Configuration, and again POS Configuration. The POST Configuration list appears.



- 2 Double-click on the required POS number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The POST Configuration tabbed dialog box appears.
- 3 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## General Tab

**Post Configuration**

POS Number:  POS Type:   Active till

General | WinPOS H/W | Non WinPOS 1 | Non WinPOS 2 | Auth. - EFT - I/F | E-Ticket - OPOS

**Receipt options**

Header/ Footer:

Graphic Logo:

Print VAT receipt

**Cashier Queue Length**

Prompt cashier every  minutes

Alert when count is:

**Amounts in Cash Drawer**

Minimum:  Control Check:

Maximum:  Control Check:

**General options**

Checkout Bank:

Keyboard type:

Debug mode:

Print text to Transaction File

Prompt for Bagger ID

Menusys Assignment:

**Till options**

Till Profile:

Till Type:

**Self Checkout**

Self Checkout Type:

Self Checkout Cashier:

Self Checkout POS No.:

Property	Description
<b>Receipt Options area:</b>	
Header/Footer	Select the header/footer to print on customer receipts from the dropdown list. For more details, see page 2-45.
Graphic Logo	Select the graphic logo to print on receipts. Logos print above the header message on receipts. Logos are optional. For more details, see page 2-42.
Print VAT Receipt	Select this parameter to print a VAT (Value Added Tax) receipt.
<b>Cashier Queue Length area:</b>	
Prompt cashier every nn minutes	Select how often to trigger the cashier prompt. When prompted, cashier enters number of customers in the line.

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>
Alert when count is	Enter a queue (line) length count. When the cashier enters a count equal to or greater than this number, an alert is transmitted to the back office.
Amounts in Cash Drawer area:	
Minimum	Enter the amount to trigger the minimum-in-drawer control check.
Control Check	The control check to display when the cash in drawer amount is equal to or less than, the minimum amount specified.
Maximum	Enter the amount to trigger the 'Assistance' message on the POS terminal. Whenever the total of all participating tenders meets or exceeds this amount, the Assistance message appears on the cashier display.
Control Check	The control check to display when the cash in drawer amount is equal to or more than, the maximum amount specified.
General options area:	
Checkout Bank	If applicable, specify the checkout bank. Checkout banks are optional logical or physical groups of checkouts. Information gathered from checkout banks is used in various reports. For more details on checkout banks see page 2-17.
Keyboard type	Specify the required keyboard type as set up in Keyboard Programming.
Debug mode	Indicate whether the terminal should operate in debug mode <i>Yes</i> or <i>No</i> .
Print text to Transaction File	Select this to see text transactions in the Electronic Journal.

Property	Description
Prompt for Bagger ID	Select this parameter to enable cashiers to enter the Bagger ID when the <i>Total</i> key is pressed. Once the Bagger ID is entered, the prompt does not display again within the transaction. For more information, see the <i>POS Terminal User's Guide</i> .
Menusys Assignment	Click the field's selection arrow and choose the POS Menu Configuration Set to assign to this POS. (For more information, see <i>Menusys Import</i> ).
Till Options Area:	
Till Profile	Select the appropriate till profile (e.g., Coffee, pharmacy, invoice, docking, etc.) from the dropdown list. This parameter allows you to customize POS menu selections by terminal type.
Till Type	Select the appropriate till type from the dropdown list. This information does not affect POS functionality. It is for informational purposes and written to the Transaction Log (TLOG).
Self Checkout Area:	
Self Checkout Type	Select the appropriate Self Checkout terminal type. Options are: <b>NCR Scot</b> <b>PSI</b> <b>None</b>
Self Checkout Cashier	Select the cashier assigned to the Self Checkout terminal.
Self Checkout POS No.	Enter the designated Self Checkout POS terminal number.

## WinPOS H/W Tab

Property	Description
<b>General area:</b>	
Generate sound from	Select from <i>Keyboard</i> , <i>PC Speaker</i> or <i>Both</i> .
Battery Backup	Select this option if a backup battery pack is installed.
<b>Keyboard Area:</b>	
Keyboard type	Select the appropriate keyboard type. Options are: <b>Standard</b> <b>ICL Post KBD</b> <b>ICL Table KBD</b> <b>SNIKEY</b> <b>DynaKey</b>
2X20 Keyboard Display	Select to enable, if this LED-type display is connected.

Property	Description
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Keyboard driver.
Port	Enter the communication port assigned to the POS Keyboard.
Drawer Area:	
Drawer type	Select from <i>None</i> , <i>Basic</i> or <i>Connected to printer</i> .
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Cash Drawer driver.
Dual Drawer	Check this box to indicate two OPOS cash drawers are attached to the POS.
Scale area:	
Port	Select the appropriate port.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scale driver.
Type	The type of scale being used at this POS.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Data bits	Select the required bits.
Parity	Select from the available options:
Display constant weight	When selected, the weight is always displayed on the cashier's display, even when there is zero weight.
Scanner 1 area:	
Port	Enter the port number to which the scanner is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scanner driver.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Parity	Select from the available options
Scanner 2 area:	
Port	Enter the port number to which the scanner is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Scanner driver.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Parity	Select from the available options
Data bits	Select the required bits.

Property	Description
<b>Note:</b>	
If necessary, refer to your scanner and scale documentation for the appropriate hardware settings.	
Customer Display area:	
Type	Select the display unit type from the dropdown list.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
Port	Enter the port number to which the customer display unit is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Customer Display driver.
Printer area:	
Type	Select the appropriate printer from the list.
Baud Rate	Select from the available options
Port	Enter the port number to which the customer printer is connected.
Use OPOS	Select for OPOS Printer driver.
MICR Reader in use	(Magnetic Ink Check Reader) Select to enable.
Printer with partial cut	Select to enable the partial cut feature on the printer.
	<b>Note:</b> The printer must be able to support this feature.
Check flip feature	Select to enable the check flip feature, an option that endorses the back of the check, flips the check and prints the front of the check.
	<b>Note:</b> The printer must be able to support this feature.

**Note:**

If you set up a non-WinPOS printer using the *WinPOS H/W* tab in the dialog box, you must set the port in the printer area.

If you are using a DOS system (that is, a Version 7 system) the printer must be connected to the Port 3 socket. The default software settings for v.7 are automatically set to Baud Rate 9600 and Port 3.

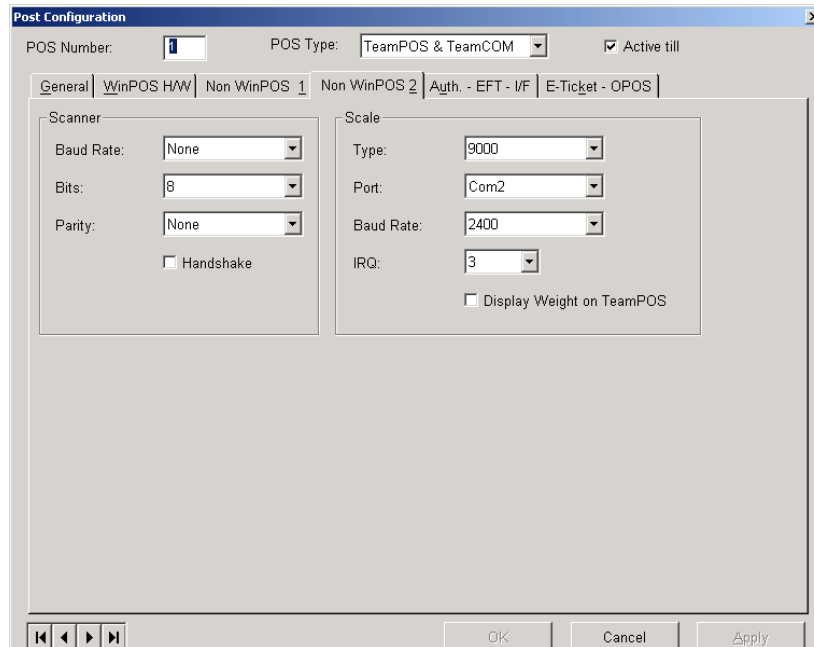
## Non WinPOS 1 Tab

The screenshot shows the 'Post Configuration' dialog box with the 'Non WinPOS 1' tab selected. The 'Screen' section includes 'Type' (VGA Color) and 'Touch Screen type' (None). The 'Customer Display' section includes 'Customer Display' (No) and '2x20 Keyboard Display' (unchecked). The 'Drawer' section includes 'Use Drawer' and 'Drawer connected to printer' (both unchecked). The 'Printer' section includes 'Type' (None) and 'MICR Reader in use' (unchecked). The 'General' section includes 'Generate 'beep' sound from:' (Keyboard), 'Port for print commands:' (dropdown), and 'Battery Backup' (unchecked). Navigation buttons (back, forward, OK, Cancel, Apply) are at the bottom.

Property	Description
Screen area:	
Type	Select the appropriate type.
Touch Screen type	Set to <i>None</i> , if not using a touch screen.
Customer Display area:	
Customer Display	Select <i>Yes</i> if a customer display is connected.
2x20 Keyboard Display	Select to enable, if this LED-type display is connected.
Drawer area:	
Use Drawer	Select to enable the cash drawer.
Drawer connected to printer	If applicable, select to enable.

Property	Description
Printer area:	
Type	Select the appropriate printer from the list.
MICR Reader in use	(Magnetic Ink Check Reader) Select to enable.
General area:	
Generate 'beep' sound from	Select from <i>Keyboard</i> , <i>PC Beep</i> , <i>Keyboard &amp; PC</i> , <i>PC Sound</i> or <i>Sound Card</i> (if connecting external speakers to the PC Sound Card or Touch Screen).
Port for print commands	Select from the dropdown list.
Battery Backup	Select this option if a backup battery pack is installed.

## Non WinPOS 2 Tab



Property	Description
Scanner area:	
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.

<b>Property</b>	<b>Description</b>
Bits	Select the required bits.
Parity	Select from the available options:
Handshake	Select this parameter to establish DTR (Data Terminal Ready) type handshake.
Scale area:	
Type	The type of scale being used at this POS.
Port	Select the appropriate port.
Baud Rate	Select the appropriate rate.
IRQ	Select the appropriate option. Refer to scale documentation for the possible interrupt requests. Beware of IRQ conflicts with other peripherals.
Display Weight on TeamPOS	If a scale is connected, optionally select this parameter to show item weight on the cashier's display. The number of items (top right corner of screen) cannot be displayed if you use this option.

## Auth – Apt - EFT

Property	Description
Authorization area:	
Type	Select the option <b>None</b> <b>SMT</b> <b>NTN</b> <b>EFT</b>
Port	Select the appropriate comm. port
Baud Rate	Select the required baud rate. Type in the baud rate according to the device.
Interfaces area:	
Type	Select the appropriate option: <b>None</b> <b>Zinetix</b> <b>Catalina</b> <b>Catalina Local Broadcast</b> <b>Catalina Global Broadcast</b>
Port (APT)	Select the appropriate comm. port.
Baud Rate	Select the baud rate.

Property	Description
EFT area:	
EFT Location	This is a unique ID number for the POS terminal. During EFT transactions, this location number is transmitted to the bank.
Allow Reconciliation	Allows the store to reconcile and balance the figures according to the store's records, with information from the bank.
Host's IP address	Enter the Host's IP address.
PinPad Customer Display	Check this box to route customer display transaction data to the PinPad device.
	<b>Note:</b>
	The Balance Due amount will be sent to the PinPad only if the General System Parameter "Print 'Bal. Due' each time subtotal pressed" (located under the Store \ POST \ Presentation \ Receipt \ Regular Printing \ Balance Due) is set enabled.
Host's Port number	Enter the Host's port number.
EFT Application program Version	Enter the EFT Application Program Version level.
EFT Application parameters Version	Enter the EFT Application Parameters Version level.

## E-Ticket - OPOS

**Post Configuration**

POS Number:  POS Type:   Active till

General | WinPOS HW | Non WinPOS 1 | Non WinPOS 2 | Auth. - EFT - I/F | **E-Ticket - OPOS**

**E-Ticket**

E-Ticket Active Virtual POS Number:  Virtual Cashier Number:

**OPOS**

OPOS Printer Driver Name:

OPOS Line Display Driver Name:

OPOS Drawer 1 Driver Name:

OPOS Drawer 2 Driver Name:

OPOS Scanner Driver Name:

OPOS Scale Driver Name:

OPOS MICR Driver Name:   Use OPOS MICR

OPOS MSR Driver Name:   Use OPOS MSR

OPOS Keyboard Driver Name:

OPOS KeyLock Driver Name:   Use OPOS KeyLock

OPOS Coin Dispenser Driver Name:   Use OPOS Coin Dispenser

OPOS Check Scanner Driver Name:   Use OPOS Check Scanner

Property	Description
<b>E-Ticket area:</b>	
E-Ticket Active	Select this parameter to enable the Electronic Ticket (E-Ticket) feature.
Virtual POS Number	Enter the number for the designated virtual E-ticket POS terminal. E-ticket transactions are logged to this POS terminal, for tracking and reporting purposes.
Virtual Cashier Number	Enter the number for the designated virtual cashier. E-ticket transactions are logged to this cashier, for tracking and reporting purposes.
<b>OPOS area:</b>	
OPOS Printer Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Printer Driver.
OPOS Line Display Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Line Display Driver.

Property	Description
OPOS Drawer 1 Driver Name	Enter the name of the first OPOS Cash Drawer Driver.
OPOS Drawer Driver 2 Name	Enter the name of the second OPOS Cash Drawer Driver.
OPOS Scanner Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Scanner Driver.
OPOS Scale Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Scale Driver.
OPOS MICR Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS MICR Driver.
Use OPOS MICR	Select for OPOS MICR driver.
OPOS MSR Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS MSR (Magnetic Stripe Reader) Driver.
Use OPOS MSR	Select for OPOS MSR driver.
OPOS Keyboard Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Keyboard Driver.
OPOS Keylock Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS Keylock Driver.
Use OPOS Keylock	Select for OPOS Keylock driver.
OPOS Coin Dispenser Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS driver used to interface the Coin Dispenser.
Use OPOS Coin Dispenser	Check is this flag box to enable using the OPOS Coin Dispenser.
OPOS Check Scanner Driver Name	Enter the name of the OPOS driver used to interface the Check Scanner in the Printer.
Use OPOS Check Scanner	Check is this flag box to enable using the Check Scanner of the printer.

**Note:**

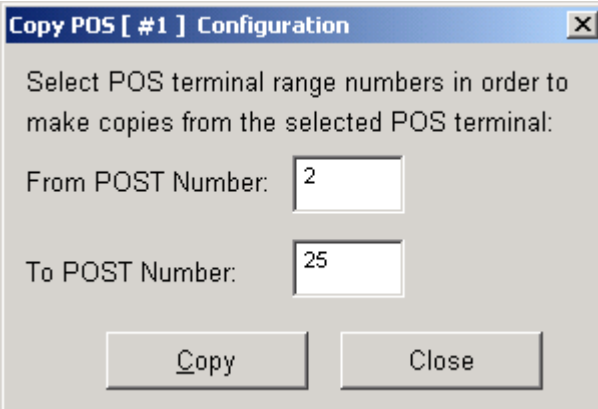
This flag must be enabled to use Electronic Check Conversion (ECC) and Check Imaging.

## Copying a POS Configuration to Other Terminals

Use this timesaving option to copy a terminal's configuration to other terminals. Should some POS terminals require different characteristics or settings, edit them separately, as required.

➤ **To copy a POS configuration to a range of terminals**

- 1 In the POS Configuration list screen, highlight the POS number to copy.
- 2 Click *Copy*. A pop-up screen prompts you to enter the range of terminals to copy the selected configuration to.



Copy POS [ #1 ] Configuration

Select POS terminal range numbers in order to make copies from the selected POS terminal:

From POST Number:

To POST Number:

This example will copy the configuration of POS number 1 to terminals 2-25

- 3 Enter the required *From POS* and *To POS* range, and then click *Copy*. The selected range of terminals appears in the list screen. Each terminal will have the identical configuration as the source POS. (In the example above, POS number 1.)
- 4 If required, edit the configuration of the newly created terminals.

## Checkout Bank Groups

Checkout Bank Groups are logical or physical groups of POS terminals. A typical store may consist of a main row of checkouts (*front end*), as well as various satellite terminals located in different areas of the store.

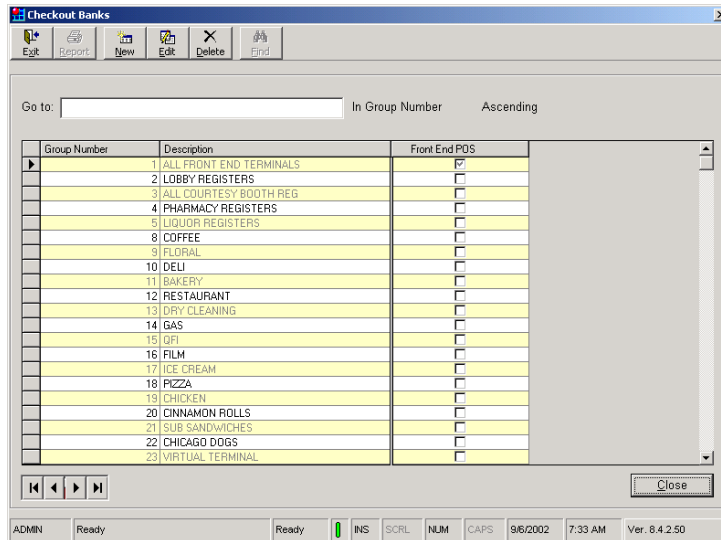
The Checkout Bank Group option lets you set up groups and give them names or descriptions to suit your environment. Use this option together with Cashier Maintenance.

Checkout Banks are used for:

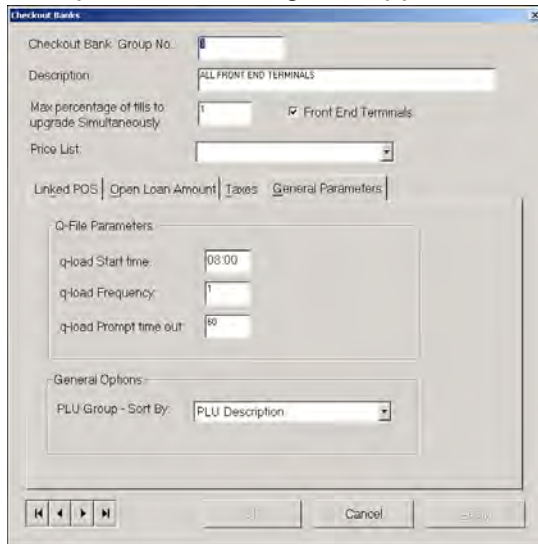
- Assigning Opening Loans to groups of cashiers (or POS terminals)
- Assigning Tax Rates to a specific group of POS terminals.
- Assigning Price Lists to a specific group of POS terminals
- Statistical reporting purposes
- Preventing cashier sign-on to specific groups

➤ **To set up a checkout bank group**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Configuration, and then Checkout Banks. The Checkout Banks list appears.



- 2 To add a new Checkout Bank select *New*. To modify an existing Checkout Bank, double-click on the required Group number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The Checkout Bank Groups tabbed dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter an appropriate checkout bank number and description.
- 4 Enter the maximum percentage of POS terminals to be upgrades for this checkout bank at one time, through Code Distribution.
- 5 To indicate that this checkout bank is in the *front end*, select the Front End Terminals option.
- 6 To attach a Price List to a Checkout Bank, click the Price List field's selection arrow and choose the Price List
- 7 Click *Apply* to save.

**Note:**

POS Terminals are linked to the Checkout Bank through POST Configuration Screen's General Tab.

- 8 To unlink a POS terminal, highlight it and click *Unlink*, or to unlink all the terminals, click *Unlink All*.
- 9 To save the Checkout Bank, click *Apply*.

## Open Loan Amount Tab

If you have set up opening loans for tenders, you can see them (and the amounts) on the Open Loan Amount tab. For more details, see *Tender Maintenance* in the *Office User's Guide*.

Checkout Banks

Checkout Bank Group No: 1

Description: ALL FRONT END TERMINALS

Max percentage of bills to upgrade Simultaneously: 1  Front End Terminals

Price List: [Dropdown]

Linked POS | **Open Loan Amount** | Taxes | General Parameters

Tender Id	Description	Amount
1	Cash	1000.00

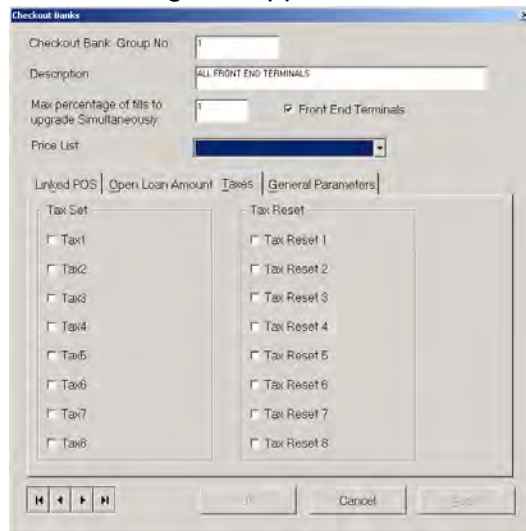
Navigation: [Home] [Back] [Forward] [End] [Apply] [Cancel] [Apply]

## Taxes Tab

The Taxes tab allows you to establish different tax rates and tax reversal (reset) conditions by checkout bank groups. For example, different tax rates may apply only to satellite terminals in a food court or deli restaurant.

➤ **To define tax rates by checkout bank group**

- 1 Select the Taxes tab on the Checkout Banks dialog box. The Taxes dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the checkboxes next to the tax rates that you want to enable for the selected checkout bank group.

**Note:**

For more details on defining tax rates, see *Tax Rates* in the *Office User's Guide*.

- 3 Select the checkboxes next to the tax rates that you want to reverse for the selected checkout bank group.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## General Parameters Tab

This tab enables you to define parameters for loading and updating POS terminal files as well as the PLU Group Sorting option. (PLU Groups can be sorted at the POS by either PLU

Description or PLU Number. Subsequent changes to PLU Groups will generate an automatic resort of the group.)

➤ **To set up POS terminal updates by checkout bank groups**

- 1 Select the Q-Load and Update File Parameters tab on the Checkout Banks dialog box. The Q-Load and Update File Parameters dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'Checkout Banks' dialog box. The 'Checkout Bank Group No.' is set to 1, and the 'Description' is 'ALL FRONT END TERMINALS'. The 'Max percentage of tills to upgrade Simultaneously' is set to 1, and the 'Front End Terminals' checkbox is checked. The 'Price List' is set to a dropdown menu. The 'Q-File Parameters' section includes 'q-load Start time' (03:00), 'q-load Frequency' (1), and 'q-load Prompt time out' (60). The 'General Options' section includes 'PLU Group - Sort By' (PLU Description) and 'Suppress Receipt Printing' (Never).

- 2 Set the properties as described below.

Parameter	Description
Q-load Start time	Specify the start time (military time) of the q-load process on the POS terminals. The system default is 03:00.
Q-load Frequency	Enter the frequency (number of tickets) for the prompt about the q-load process. This POS prompt will be redisplayed on the POS terminal after 'X' tickets.
Q-load Prompt time out	Enter the prompt timeout, in seconds. The q-load prompts will timeout after 'X' seconds.
PLU Group – Sort By:	Click the field's selection arrow and choose either <b>PLU Description</b> (to sort the group by item description) or <b>PLU Number</b> (to sort the group by item number). The POS terminals linked to the Checkout Bank will sort the PLU Groups accordingly.

### Suppress Receipt Printing

Click the field selection arrow and choose one of the following options:

- Never – Always print the receipt
- Ask Yes / No – Will prompt the cashier whether or not to print the sales receipt
- Always – Will not print a sales receipt or prompt the cashier.

**Note:**

This setting will not affect other types of printing such as endorsement printing, suspended transaction printing, or administration receipts (such as X Read Report, POS Reports, Pick-up and Loan slips) that will print regardless of this setting.

Suppressing receipt printing does not affect the collection of data in the TLOG file. All information will be recorded as normal and may be viewed through the Electronic Journal. If a sales receipt is not generated (regardless of which option setting is selected), the "Print Last Transaction" POS Function can still be used to print a sales receipt. If the option is set to "Always", receipts will not print during training mode or for transaction voids and returns.

- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Substore Definitions

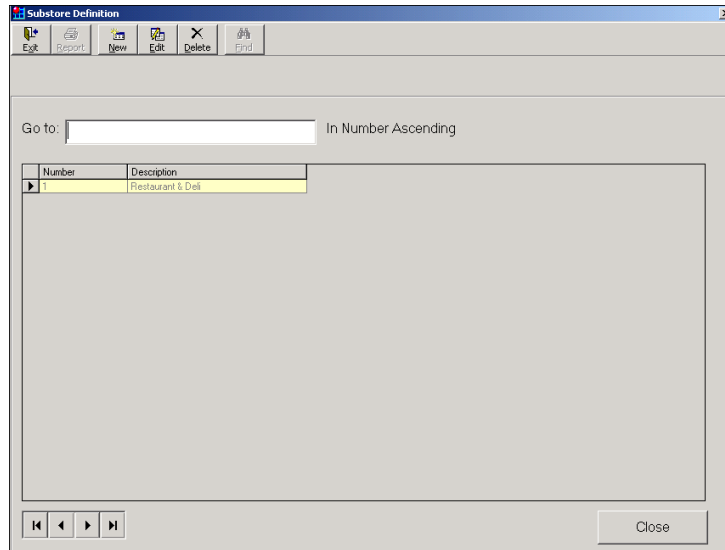
Checkout Banks may be assigned to substores for reporting purposes. Both the PLU Sales by Location Report and the Department Sales by Location Report can be produced by Substore selection.

**Note:**

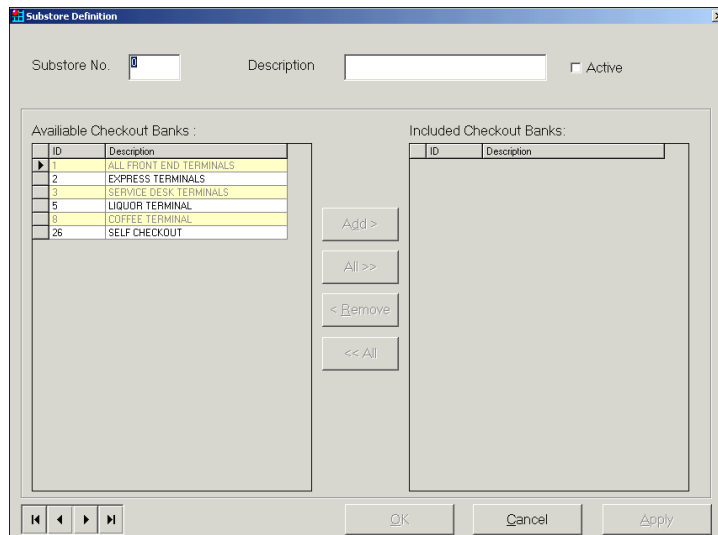
The General System Parameter "PLU Sales by Location Report in System" (located in the Store\Front Office\Reports folder) must be enabled for the report to be functional.

➤ **To setup a Substore Definition**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Configuration and then Substore Definition. The Substore Definition list appears.



- 2 To add a new Substore Definition select *New*. To modify an existing Substore Definition, double-click on the required Substore number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The Substore Definition dialog box appears.

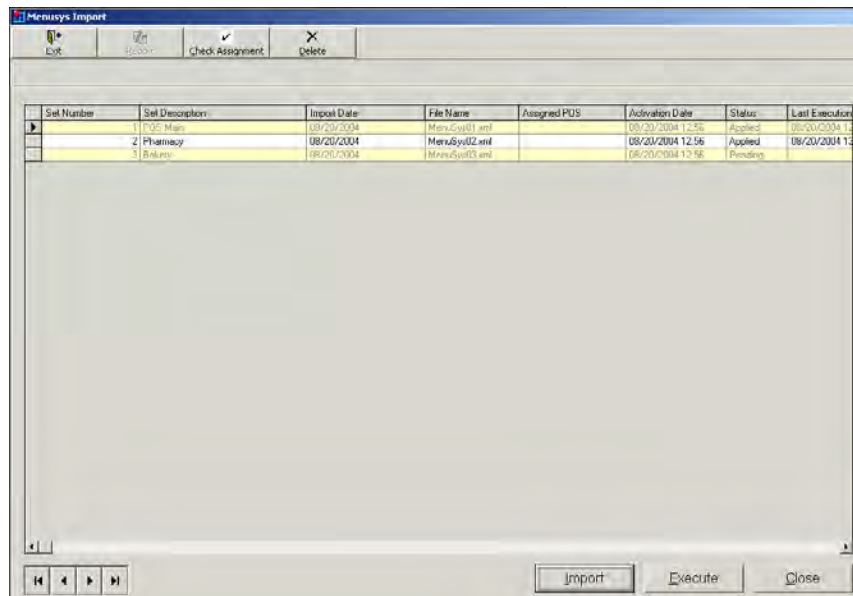


- 3 For new Substore Definitions, assign a number, description and set the check the Active checkbox (to make the Substore available for reporting purposes).

- 4 Select the a Checkout Bank group to add to the definition, highlight it and click *Add*, or to add all the Checkout Bank groups, click *Add >>*.
- 5 Repeat step 4 for each Checkout Bank to add to the definition.
- 6 To remove a Checkout Bank group from the Included Checkout Banks list, select the Checkout Bank and click *Remove*, or to remove all Checkout Banks, click *<<All*.
- 7 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Menusys Import

The Menusys Import screen displays all previously imported POS Menus (i.e. POS Configuration Sets) created using the Retailix Keyboard Macro Tool. The Keyboard Macro Tool is a program that defines the layout and functionality of your store's POS soft-keys. (See the ***Retailix Keyboard Macro Tool Guide*** for more information).



The screen contains the following fields and buttons:

**Note:**

Fields marked with an asterisk (\*) are imported from the POS Configuration Set Parameters established using the Keyboard Macro Tool..

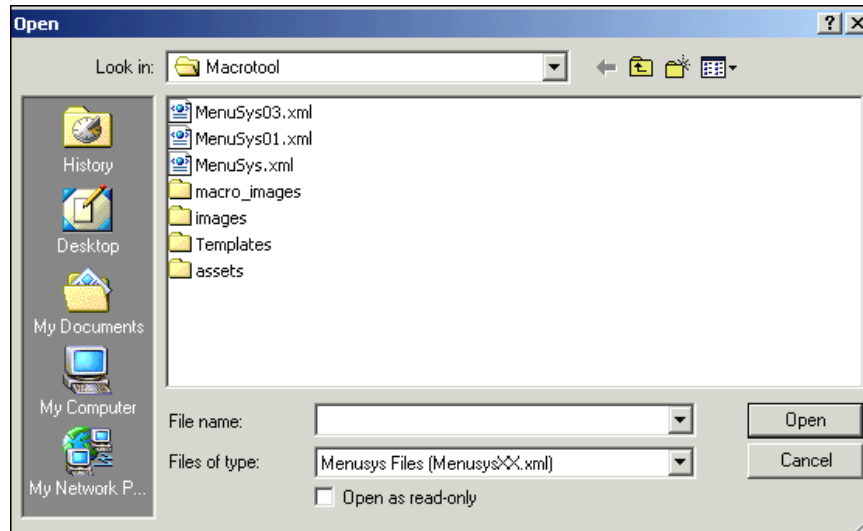
<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Set Number *	The number assigned to the POS Menu Configuration Set.
Set Description *	The description of the POS Menu Configuration Set.
Import Date	The date the POS Menu Configuration Set was last imported.
Filename	The filename assigned to the POS Menu Configuration set.
Assigned POS *	The POS numbers assigned to the POS Menu Configuration Set.
Activation Date *	The date and time the POS Menu Configuration Set will become available for implementation.
Status	The implementation status of the POS Menu Configuration Set. This field will display "Pending" while it awaits implementation. Once successfully implemented, the status will change to "Executed". If problems occur with implementation, the status will display "Errors".
Last Execution	The data and time the POS Menu Configuration Set was last implemented.

<b>Button</b>	<b>Description</b>
Exit	Click this button to return to the Main Menu.
Report	Click the button to generate the Menusys Import Report.

Button	Description
Check Assignment	Click this button to display POST Configurations have been assigned the highlighted POS Menu Configuration Set (see <b>New Field</b> below).
Delete	Click this to delete the highlighted POS Menu Configuration Set.  <b>Note:</b> You cannot remove a configuration set that is presently assigned to a POST.
Import	Click this button to import a POS Menu Configuration Set configured using the Retailix Keyboard Macro Tool.
Execute	Click this button to manually implement the POS Menu Configuration Set.
Close	Click this button to return to the Main Menu.

## Importing MenuSys.XML Files

- **To import a POS Configuration Set (on MFS1):**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Configuration and then Menusys Import. The Menusys Import screen appears.
  - 2 Click the *Import* button.  
*The Open window appears:*



- 3 Browse to the location of the XML files maintained by the Keyboard Macro Tool. Highlight the XML file to import and click the *Open* button.

*The file is imported and given a "Pending" status.*

- 4 (Optional) If manually implementing the set at the POS immediately, highlight the Set and click *Execute*.
- 5 Repeat steps 1 through 3 to import additional sets.
- 6 When finished, click the *Close* to return to the Main Menu.

## POS Parameters

This section enables you to set parameters that define which functions are available on the POS terminals, and how they perform in various circumstances.

### Card Program

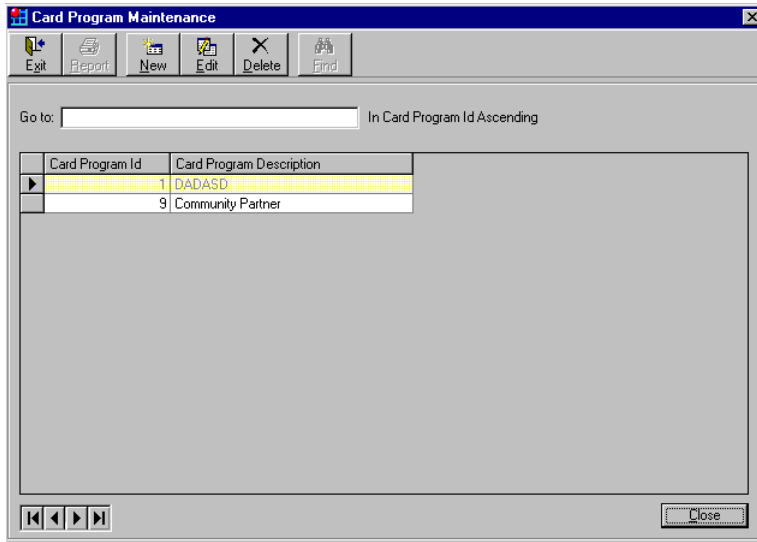
A card program enables a store to donate a percentage of the total value of the ticket to a specified community charity. The charity is identified by means of a swiped or scanned card.

When the card number is entered in the POS terminal, the system tracks the card number and sales transaction in the Electronic Journal, for later retrieval by the host. At host level, the retailer calculates the percentage of the ticket value that is to be donated and identifies to which charity the money is to be donated.

### Card Program Maintenance

Card Program Maintenance is used to define community card programs. In addition, it enables you to define the text that will appear on both the POS screen and the ticket, when the card program feature is used.

- **To access the card program maintenance parameters**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Card Program and then Card Program Maintenance. The Card Program Maintenance list is displayed.



Buttons are provided at the top of the window to enable new card programs to be defined, and existing programs to be edited or deleted.

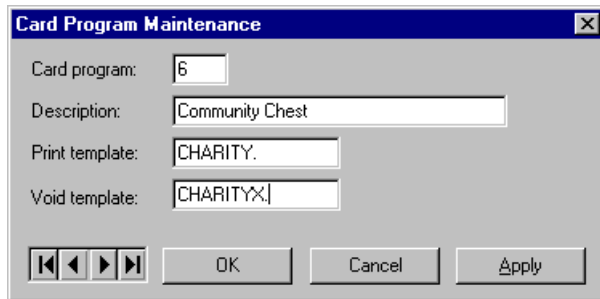
The list area of the window displays existing card programs and contains two fields, as follows:

Field	Description
Card Program Id	The identity number of the card program. This number is the same as the second number on the Card Program card. Refer to the page 2-29 for information about the Card Program number sequence.
Card Program Description	The name of the Card Program.

## Adding a Card Program

### ➤ To add a new card program

- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window click *New*. The following dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Enter a Card Program number and description.
- 3 Enter the appropriate template names in the *Print Template* and *Void Template* fields.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

**Note:**

The print template name must be written in capital letters and must be identical to the name of the DOS template file, to ensure that the text is displayed on the POS terminal and printed on the receipt.

## Editing a Card Program

➤ **To edit a card program**

- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window, select the card program that you want to edit and click *Edit*. The Card Program Maintenance dialog box is displayed, as shown on the previous page.
- 2 Make the required changes to the information and click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Deleting a Card Program

➤ **To delete a card program**

- 1 From the Card Program Maintenance window, select the program that you want to delete and click *Delete*. You are prompted to confirm the deletion.
- 2 Click *Yes*. The program is deleted.

## Member Card & Promotions

Use the Member Card and Promotions option to set up voucher ranges.

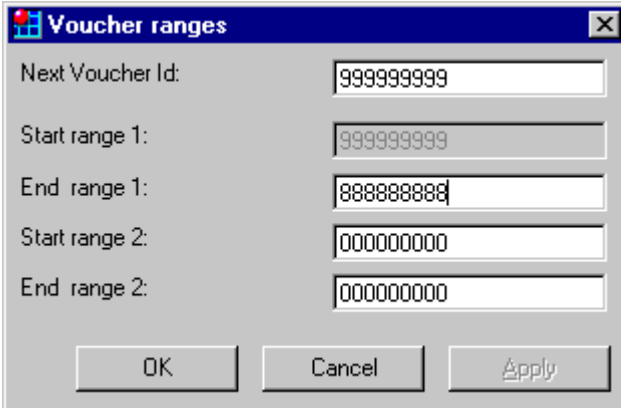
### Voucher Ranges

Voucher Ranges are used for gas reward schemes only. This option maintains a record of gas reward vouchers, which have been redeemed.

**Note:** Making changes is unnecessary, as the system automatically updates the Next Voucher ID range.

➤ **To set Voucher Ranges**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Member Card & Promotions and then Voucher Ranges. The Voucher Ranges dialog box appears.



Next Voucher Id:	999999999
Start range 1:	999999999
End range 1:	888888888
Start range 2:	000000000
End range 2:	000000000

Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

- 2 Enter the Next Voucher Id. This number can be up to 9 digits. If this is the first time a number is entered here, the system automatically transfers the number to the *Start range 1* field.
- 3 Enter the various field numbers accordingly.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Trading Stamps

Trading Stamps may be awarded to customers according to the rules you specify. Use this feature's, options, and parameters to suit your specific requirements.

## Multiple Stamp Schemes

Use the options in Multiple Stamp Schemes to award customers with extra stamps. You can set up schemes with different rules for various days and times.

### ➤ To set up Multiple Stamp Schemes

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Trading Stamps and then Multiple Stamp Schemes. The Multiple Stamp Schemes list appears.
- 2 Highlight a scheme number and click *Edit*. The Multiple Stamp Schemes dialog box appears.

Multiple Stamp Schemes dialog box showing the following configuration:

- Scheme Number: 1
- Active:
- General tab selected
- Days:  Sun,  Mon,  Tue,  Wed,  Thu,  Fri,  Sat
- Start Time: 08:00
- End Time: 22:00
- Minimum purchase: 100.00
- Multiplication factor: 5.00
- Buttons: OK, Cancel, Apply

- 3 Accept the scheme number or enter another one.

- 4 Set the various properties and options as defined below.

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Active	Check to activate the scheme.
Sun - Sat	Check the required day(s).
Start time	Time to activate the scheme for the above day(s).
End time	Time to terminate the scheme for the above day(s).
Minimum purchase	The minimum purchase amount required enabling multiplication. If a customer buys for less than the specified amount, the number of stamps awarded is not multiplied.
Multiplication factor	The qualifying amount purchased (or number of stamps) is multiplied by the factor you enter here.

- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Coupon Parameters

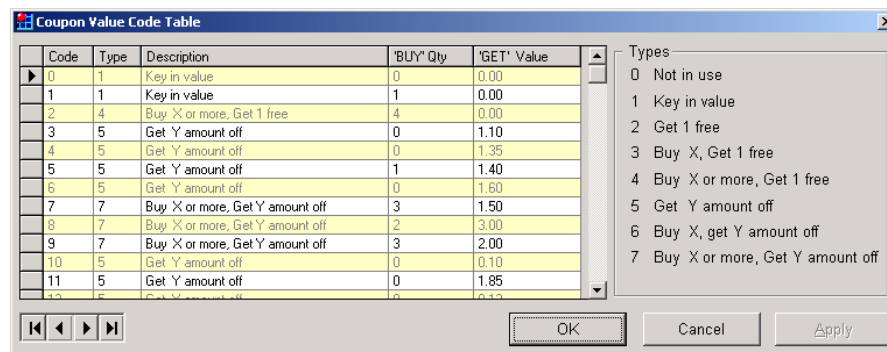
Coupon parameters enables you to link coupons to the appropriate tender types, and to define how coupon transactions are printed on the receipt.

The following options are available from the Coupon Parameters menu:

- Coupon Value Code Table
- Coupon Printing Maintenance

### Coupon Value Code Table

This option contains parameters for defining UPC5-type vendor coupons.



The column on the left side provides a list of coupon type codes. These 2-digit code numbers are used to identify the type of discount or offer on each coupon.

#### ➤ To define a coupon type

- 1 Highlight the relevant code.
- 2 Enter a type code from the list on the right, and press **OK**.  
The following types are available:

- 00 - Not in use
- 01 - Key in value (coupon without value, key in amount manually)
- 02 - Get 1 free

- 03 - Buy X get 1 free
- 04 - Buy X or more, get 1 free
- 05 - Get Y amount off
- 06 - Buy X, get Y amount off
- 07 - Buy X or more, get Y amount off

X denotes the quantity to be purchased in order to get a coupon. If you selected any one of the options containing X, you need to enter the quantity in the "BUY" Qty field.

Y denotes amount to be reduced. If you selected any one of the options containing Y, you need to enter the amount in the "GET" Value field.

- 3 In the "BUY" Qty field, enter the quantity to purchase in order to get a coupon.
- 4 In the "GET" Value field, enter the amount to be reduced from sale. (Do not enter an amount if the coupon type is defined as 'get one free'.)
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Coupon Printing Maintenance

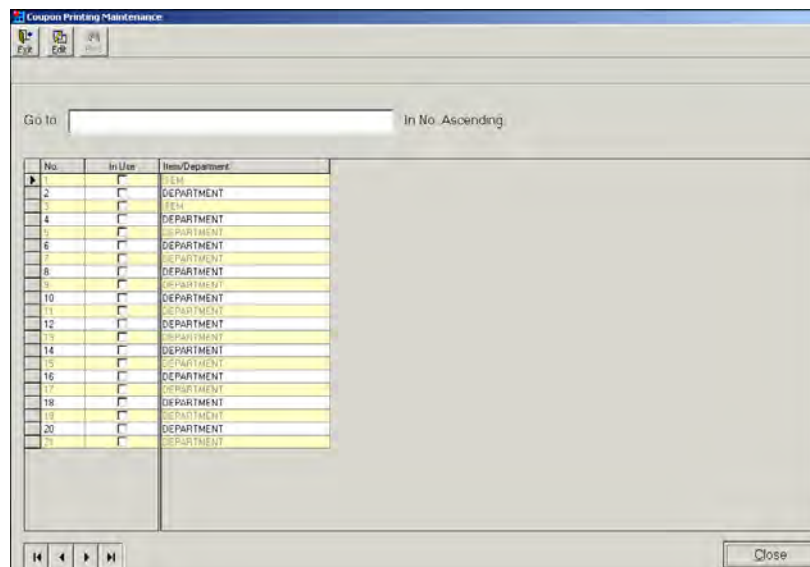
The Coupon Printing option enables you to define and design store coupons to be printed for each customer transaction based on the items in that basket. A customer has the right to a coupon based on the following conditions:

- Purchasing a specific item.
- Purchasing an item from a specific department.
- Not purchasing a specific item.
- Not purchasing an item from a specific department.

A coupon prints on a 5-line format at the end of a customer transaction.

➤ **To access the Coupon Printing Maintenance**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Coupon Parameters and then Coupon Printing Maintenance. The Coupon Printing Maintenance screen appears.



- 2 Highlight the Coupon Number to modify and click *Edit*. The Coupon Printing Maintenance tabbed dialog box appears.

The dialog box contains two tabs, each of which is described in the following sections.

- 3 On each tab, set the properties and options as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## General Tab

This tab enables you to define the conditions printing coupons.

Parameter	Description
Coupon Number	Enter the coupon number.
Coupon in use	Check or uncheck to enable or disable the coupon. The coupon will be printed on each POS terminal as per system setup.
Select Item/Department number	Item – the basket will be searched for a specific item. Department - the basket will be searched for a specific department.

Parameter	Description
Department Number or PLU Number	If the coupon is item specific, enter the PLU number of the item. If the coupon is department specific, enter the department number. Type in the number or press the browser button, to the right, to display a list of items or departments and select the required value.
Select item/Department found/not found in basket	Found – if the item or department is found in the basket, that particular coupon prints on the register. Not Found - if the item or department is not found in the basket, the coupon prints on the register.
Print barcode	Check this parameter to enable barcode printing on the coupon.
<hr/> <b>Note:</b> Barcodes can be printed only if you use thermal receipt printers. <hr/>	
Barcode number	If the Print Barcode parameter is checked, type in the required barcode number, up to 13 digits. If the system is operating without check digit validation, the POS terminal adds a valid CD to the barcode number when it prints. If the system is operating with check digit validation, the POS terminal checks if the barcode has a valid CD and prints only if a valid CD exists. Select <i>check digit</i> . The system calculates and inserts the check digit.
Ticket amount to print coupon	Use this parameter to make the system look at the amount you enter here as the qualifier. The system will not check if items are found or not found in the transaction.
Minimum purchase amount required	Customer must spend the minimum amount you enter here, to qualify for the coupon.

Parameter	Description
CC for minimum purchase	Enter the number of the Control Check to display when the amount purchased is less than the pre-defined purchase amount required for this coupon. (See parameter, <i>Minimum purchase amount required</i> , above.)
Graphic Logo	From the dropdown list, select the Graphic Logo to print on the coupon. Reference the POS Logo Maintenance section for information on creating Graphic Logos.

## Coupon Lines Tab

The Coupon Lines option enables you to enter 5 lines of alphanumeric text, which prints on the customer receipt.

The screenshot shows the 'Coupon Printing Maintenance' dialog box with the 'Coupon Lines' tab selected. At the top, there is a 'Coupon Number' field with a cursor and a 'Coupon in use' checkbox. Below this are two tabs: 'General' and 'Coupon Lines'. The 'Coupon Lines' tab contains a table with five rows. The first row has a 'Text' column and a 'Bold' checkbox. The other four rows are empty. To the right of the table is a 'Line Alignment' section with two buttons: 'Left' and 'Center'. At the bottom of the dialog are navigation arrows and buttons for 'Check Digit', 'OK', 'Cancel', and 'Apply'.

### ➤ To define coupon lines

- 1 Enter the coupon text accordingly.
- 2 Set the line alignment to either left or center. You may also set the font to print bold text.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Restricted Sales Options

The Restricted Sale feature enables you to define restrictions on sales of items or on sales encompassing entire departments. The restrictions set here may apply to special dates.

### Restricted Sales Special Dates

This option allows you to restrict sales on specific dates and times you specify.

- **To set up the Restricted Sale Special Dates options**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup, POS Parameters, Restricted Sales Options and then the Restricted Sales Special Dates option. The Restricted Sale Special Dates dialog box appears.

No.	Date	Start-1	Stop-1	Start-2	Stop-2	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
1	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
9	01/01/15	00:00	00:00	00:00	00:00	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Specify the specific date and time you want to restrict sales.
- 3 You can link each restricted sale to a previously defined layout. These layouts contain specific rules, for example, which departments or items are restricted.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## POS Receipt Setup

This menu contains all the facilities for setting up the various receipt printing options:

- Receipt Logo
- Receipt Header/Footer

**Note:**

Settings for retailer information, receipt organization and receipt printing are now set up through General System Parameters. From the *Main Menu* tab, select the *System Administration* folder, and then the *General System Parameters* folder.

### Receipt Logo

Use this utility to set up and print company logos on POS terminal receipts.

The system accepts only 1-bit, black and white .BMP (bitmap) graphic files. These files must reside in the C:\PCMASTER\SEQ directory.

You must set logo dimensions in a suitable graphics or paint program. Make sure that logo sizes match the following specifications for the appropriate printer type, as described on the following page.

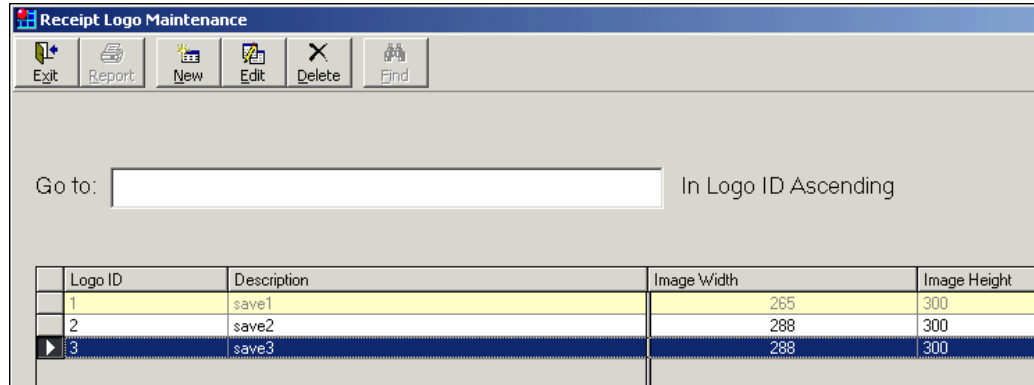
Printer Type	BMP File Size
Epson TM930	Width - 180 pixels maximum Height - No limit
Epson TMT80 (Thermal)	Width - 192 pixels maximum Height - No limit

<b>Printer Type</b>	<b>BMP File Size</b>
Axiohm 7156 (Thermal)	Width - 448 pixels maximum Height - 384 pixels maximum
	<b>Note:</b> Although the dimensions above are the maximum allowed, you cannot use both at the maximum size. For example, if width is 448, height must be <i>less</i> than 384. The maximum size must be equal to or less than width x height, with a maximum of 172032. The logo image is loaded into printer memory when the POS terminal is powered up. This allows high speed printing of the logo.
Fujitsu	Width - 400 pixels maximum Height - 48 pixels maximum The logo is loaded into printer memory.

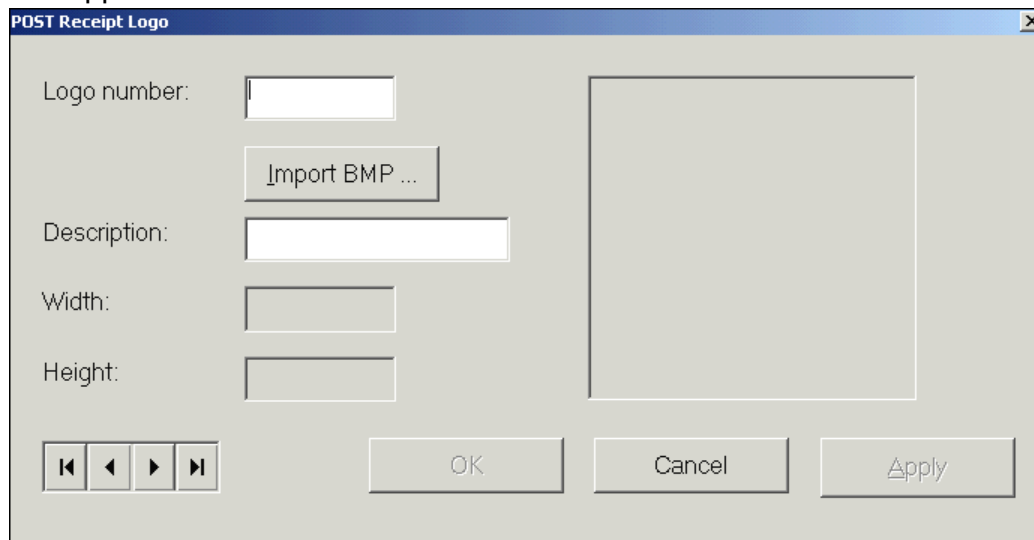
To enable printing of a logo, specify the required logo number for each POS terminal, in POS Configuration. (For details, refer to the beginning of this chapter).

➤ **To set up a receipt logo**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Receipt Logo. The POS Logo Maintenance list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The POST Receipt Logo dialog box appears.



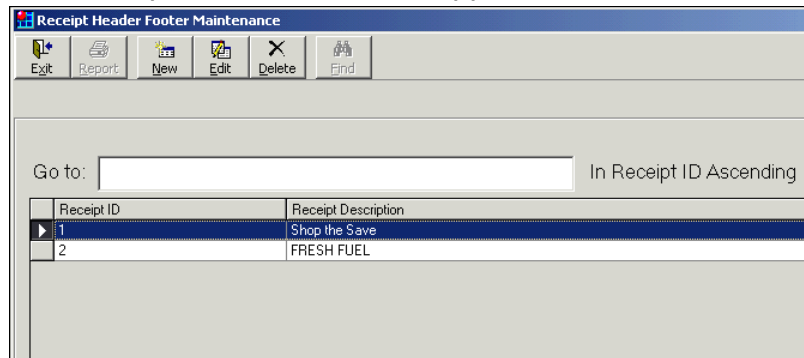
- 3 Enter a logo number.
- 4 Click *Import BMP...* to choose an image. Select the required image file. A preview of the image displays.
- 5 Type in a description.
- 6 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Receipt Header Footer

The Receipt Header/Footer Maintenance option lets you design the headers and footers that print on customer receipts. Both the header (top lines of the receipt) and the footer (bottom lines of the receipt) can contain up to 10 lines of text, and they can be printed in normal or bold characters, and centered or left-aligned.

You can create various headers and footers and link them to different POS terminals.

- **To set up a receipt header/footer**
- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Receipt Setup, and then Receipt Header/Footer. The Receipt Header/Footer list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The Receipt Header/Footer dialog box appears.

Text	Print	Bold
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Super Savers #18	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
123 W. Main	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Jonestown, WI 53016	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
920-555-1122	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

The *Header* and *Footer* tabs look identical. They both allow you to enter up to 10 lines of text.

- 3 Enter a number and name.
- 4 Type in the header and footer text.
- 5 You can mark each line to print (either text you enter, or a blank line) and set the text to bold. Also, you can specify each line to be left or center aligned.

- 6 To see a preview of how the header and footer will appear on the receipt, click on the *Preview* tab.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "Receipt Header Footer Maintenance". At the top, there are two input fields: "Receipt ID:" with the value "1" and "Receipt Description:" with the value "Shop the Save". Below these fields are three tabs: "Header", "Footer", and "Preview". The "Preview" tab is selected, displaying a receipt preview. The receipt text is as follows:

```
Super Savers #18  
123 W. Main  
Jonestown, WI 53016  
920-555-1122  
-----  
PLU #1 $1.00  
PLU #2 $1.00  
  
2 BAL DUE $2.00  
CASH $2.00
```

- 7 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Once headers and footer are designed, you can link them to the POS terminals. This is performed in POST configuration. (For details, refer to beginning of this chapter).

## Retailer Information 1-5

### Note:

Settings for Retailer Information are also set up through General System Parameters (in the Store \ POST \ Presentation \ Retailer Information 1-5 folders). From the *Main Menu* tab, select the *System Administration* folder, and then the *General System Parameters* folder. See Chapter 1, *System Parameter Tree* for more information.

## Organize Receipt

### Note:

Settings for Organize Receipt are also set up through General System Parameters (in the Store \ POST \ Presentation \ Receipt \ Buffer Printing folder and sub-folders). From the *Main Menu* tab, select the *System Administration* folder, and then the *General System Parameters* folder. See Chapter 1, *System Parameter Tree* for more information.

## POS Keyboards

The POS Keyboard option enables you to design and customize the keyboards of the POS terminals. You can set up different keyboard layouts and then map functions to specific keys.

## Keyboard Functions

The Keyboard Functions option lists all functions available for use on a POS terminal, and allows you to change a function name or add new functions. All necessary functions are included with the installation of Office, and should not be modified. Although you are able to change the function descriptions, the functions themselves remain unaffected.

New functions may be included in program upgrades received from time to time.

Dealers and technical support personnel may also add custom designed functions via *custom links*. These are mini applications, which can be activated at the POS terminal.

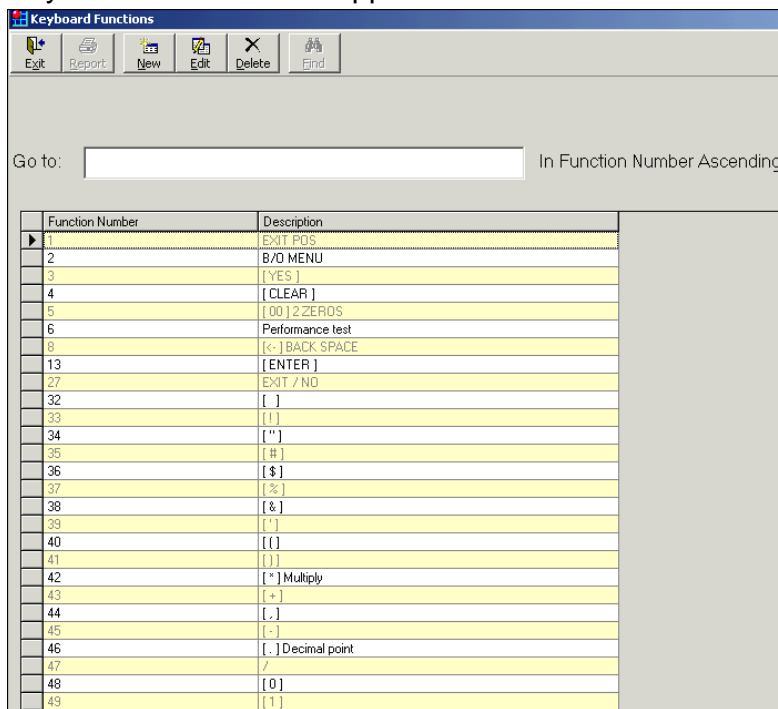
## Keyboard Function Assignments

Number	Assignment
1 - 90	Alphanumeric keyboard keys.
327 - 337	Navigation keys.
700 - 799	Reserved for customer hook functions (custom links). Use this range of functions if you develop custom links.
701 - 799	Not used.

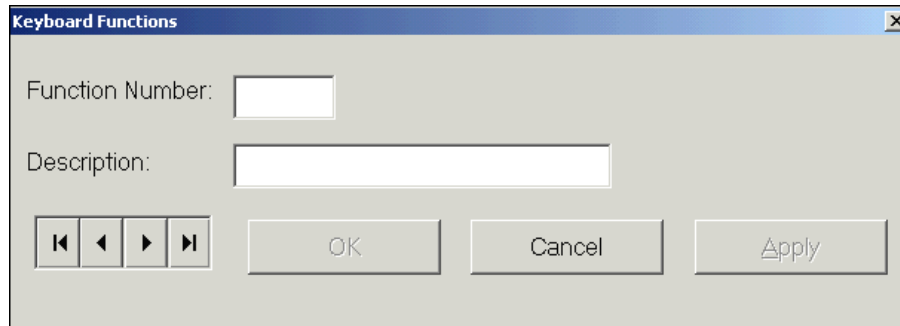
Number	Assignment
800 - 899	These are idle mode and sale mode functions, for POS closed and POS open states.
900 - 1450	Used for POS functions in sale mode only, POS open state.

➤ **To add a new keyboard function**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Keyboards and then Keyboard Functions. The Keyboard Functions list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The Keyboard Functions dialog box appears.



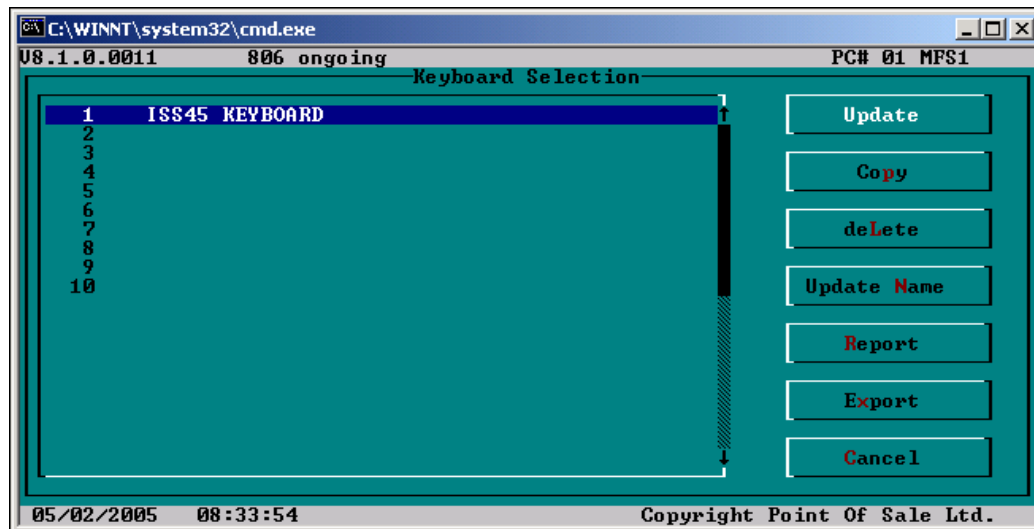
- 3 Enter the *Function ID* and *Description*.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## Keyboard Programming

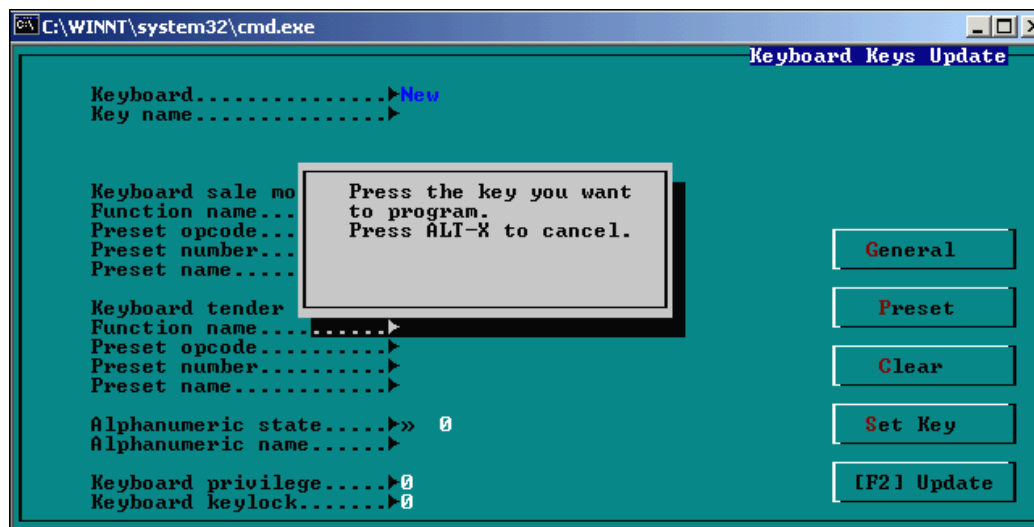
This option serves to define a keyboard layout. Keyboard layouts can be defined for specific POS terminals as well as for different *types* of keyboard.

➤ **To define a new keyboard layout**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Keyboards and then Keyboard Programming. The Keyboard Programming list appears:



- 2 Highlight one of the blank lines in the Keyboard Selection screen, and select *Update*.
- 3 Select the *Update Name* function (*Alt+N*) to assign a name. The Keyboard Name window displays.
- 4 Type in the name and press *F2*. The name now appears on the keyboard selection list.
- 5 Select the *Update* (*Alt+U*) function. The Keyboard Data screen displays. This screen lists the functions that you assign to the keyboard keys. At this stage, the screen is empty
- 6 To assign a function, select *Insert* (*Alt+I*). The Keyboard Keys - Update screen displays.



- 7 On the keyboard, press the function key to be programmed. For example, the Enter key. The name of the key displays in the Key Name field. The cursor is now positioned on Keyboard sale mode.
- 8 A keyboard key can be programmed to activate different functions in Sale Mode and Tender Mode. In the Keyboard sale mode field, specify the required function for Sale Mode. There are two options:
  - A *general* function from the standard functions defined in the system (see 'Function Maintenance', earlier in this chapter).

- A preset function such as a PLU item, a department, a return, etc.

**General Function**

To assign a general function, select the *General* function (Alt+G). The Keyboard Function window displays.



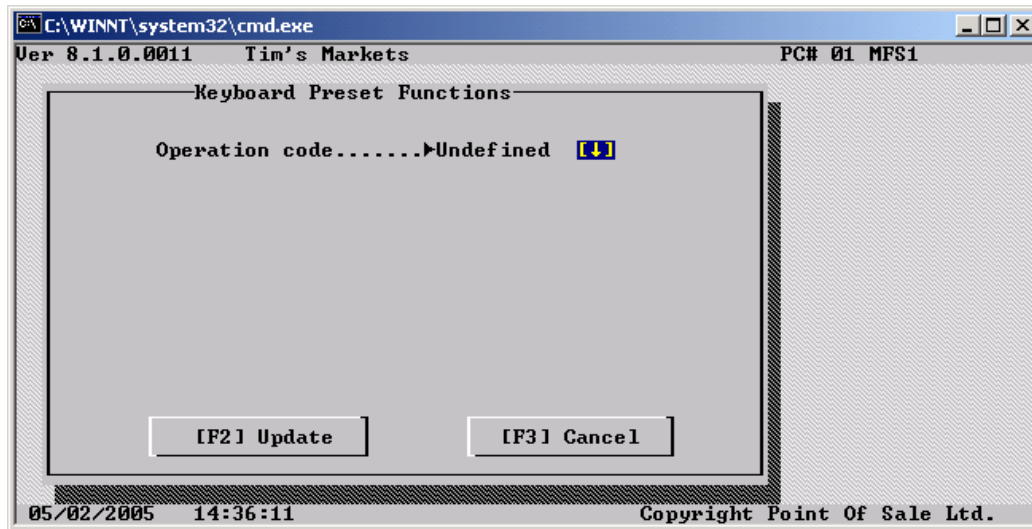
Use the *PgUp*, *PgDn*, *Up Arrow* and *Down Arrow* keys to locate the required key, and press *Enter* to select it.

The function number and name appear in the Keyboard sale mode and Function Name fields.

Press *Enter* to continue to Keyboard tender mode. To assign a function for Tender Mode, repeat the same procedure as for Sale Mode. If no Tender Mode definition is needed, just press *Enter* to continue.

**Preset Function**

To assign a preset function, select the *Preset* function (Alt+P). The Keyboard Preset Functions window displays.



Press the *Right Arrow* to select a code. A drop-down window lists the available options:

- Undefined
- PLU
- Department
- Tender
- Discount
- Return
- Expenses (payouts and receipts)

Highlight the required operation code and press *Enter* to select it.

Press *Enter* to continue. A window prompts you for specific information depending on the operation code you selected.

### **For PLU**

The Preset Key to PLU window displays.

Enter the number of the PLU item to be rung up by the key you are defining. You can select an item from the items list window, by pressing *F8*.

### **For Department**

The Preset Key to Department displays.

Enter the number of the Department to be rung up by the key you are defining. You can select a department from the departments list window, by pressing *F8*.

In the Value field, enter the value to be automatically entered by the key. Press *Enter* to continue.

### **For Tender**

The Preset Key to Tender window displays. This window is similar to the Preset Key to Department window.

Specify the Tender Number and the Value to be entered by the key.

### **For Discount**

The Preset Key to Discount window displays. Specify the number of the discount to be performed by the key you are defining.

### **For Return**

The Preset Key to Return window displays. Specify the number of the return to be performed by the key you are defining.

### **For Expense**

The Preset Key to Expense window displays. Specify the payout/receipt code to be entered by the key you are defining.

- 1 After selecting the operation code and entering its details, press *F2* to record the preset function. The Keyboard Keys Update screen returns with the Function Name, Preset Opcode, Preset Number (PLU number, department number, etc.), and the Preset name (PLU item name, department name, etc.). The cursor appears at the Alphanumeric state field.
- 2 Press *Enter* to skip this field and continue to the Keyboard privilege field.

- 3 To assign a keyboard privilege to the key, type in the required value. Valid privileges are 1-8, with 8 being the highest privilege. Use keyboard privileges to ensure that certain functions are activated only by authorized employees, for example, supervisors.
- 4 If necessary, a keyboard keylock position may be defined. Type in the required value. Valid keylock positions are 1 - 8. The actual range on the standard keyboard is 1 – 5.

Keylock positions are used to impose control by supervisors and management.

**Note:**

Keylock position numbers are dependent on the keyboard type connected to the POS terminal.

- 5 Having assigned a function to a key, press *F2* to record the definition.
- 6 To quit, press *Esc*. The Keyboard Data screen now lists the functions and preset operations you have assigned to keyboard keys. From this screen you can update or delete a key assignment. This is explained in 'Updating a Keyboard Layout', below.

## Updating a Keyboard Layout

➤ **To update a keyboard layout**

- 1 In the Keyboard Selection screen, highlight the required keyboard, and select *Update*. The Keyboard Data screen displays.
- 2 Perform the required function:

Function	Description
Insert	Select <i>Insert</i> to enter a new assignment. Follow the instructions in “Defining a New Keyboard Layout”.
Update	Highlight a key assignment and select <i>Update (Alt+U)</i> . The Keyboard Keys - Update screen displays the details of the assignment. The cursor is positioned on Keyboard sale mode. Select the function from the list window. To select a general function, press <i>Alt+G</i> . The

Function	Description
	Keyboard Functions window displays. The Used column in this window shows the number of times each function has been used ( a √ sign for each use). To select a preset function, press <i>Alt+P</i> . Change the Keyboard tender mode in the same way, if necessary. Press <i>F2</i> to update.
Delete	Highlight the key assignment to be deleted, and select <i>deLete (Alt+L)</i> . In the confirmation box, select <i>Yes</i> to delete or <i>No</i> to retain the key assignment.

➤ **To update a keyboard name**

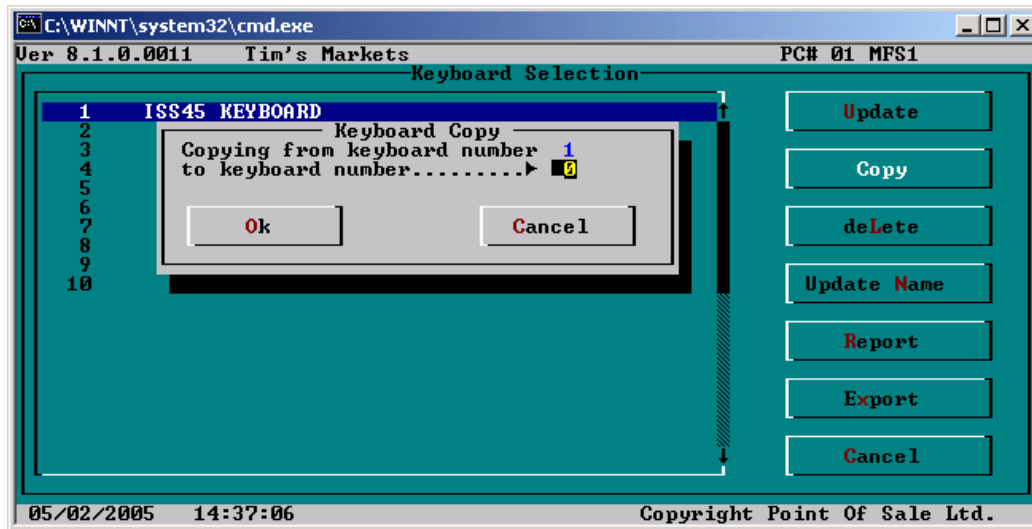
- 1 In the Keyboard Selection screen, highlight the required keyboard, and select Update Name (Alt+N). The Keyboard Name window displays with the name of the selected keyboard.
- 2 Overtyping a new name.
- 3 Press F2 to update.

**Copying a Keyboard Layout**

You can create a new keyboard layout based on an existing layout. First copy the layout and then make the necessary changes via the *Update* function.

➤ **To copy a layout**

- 1 In the Keyboard Selection screen, highlight the keyboard from which you want to copy, and select the *coPy (Alt+P)* function. The Keyboard Copy window displays.



- 2 Type in the number of the new keyboard layout. Press *Enter* and then *OK* (or *Enter*). The copied layout appears in the list.

**Note:**

If the target keyboard already exists, a message box displays the following: *Keyboard exists. Are you sure?* Select *No* if you don't want to copy onto the existing keyboard. Select *Yes* to override the existing keyboard.

**Function Usage Report**

Select the *Func Usage* function (*Alt+F*). The report screen displays.

This report lists functions in function number sequence, and shows which keys are assigned to each of these functions.

To view all parts of the displayed list use the following:

- *Right Arrow* and *Left Arrow* to shift the screen in the arrow direction.
- *Ctrl+Right Arrow* and *Ctrl+Left Arrow* to shift to the last column and first column.
- *PgUp* and *PgDn* to page through the lines of the list.

Press *F10* to print the list.

### Keys Defined

Select the *Keys Defined* (*Alt+K*) function. The report screen displays.

This report lists key assignments by keys.

For functions available on this screen, refer to 'Function Usage Report', above.

**Note:**

A keyboard is linked to a POS terminal via the POST Configuration screen's Keyboard Type field (on the General Tab).

## POS Menu

The POS Menu option allows you to customize the options listed on the POS terminal when the Back Office Menu key is used in *closed* mode (signed-off), in *sales* mode (signed-on) and when *supervisor* functions are listed (either signed-on or off).

**Note:**

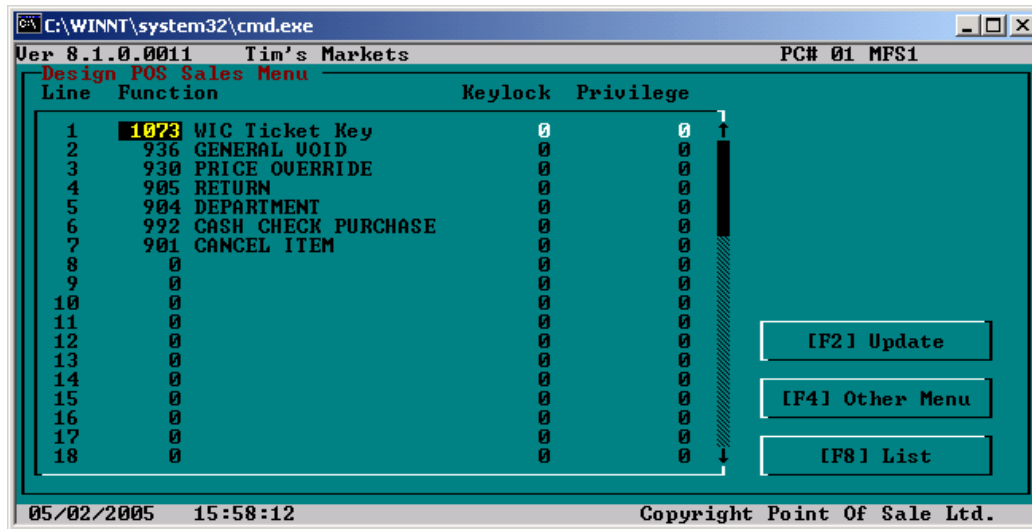
To allow terminal operators to display the POS terminal back office menus, a back office menu key must be defined on the keyboard. For more information see the section on Keyboard Programming on page 2-50.

## POS Sales Menu

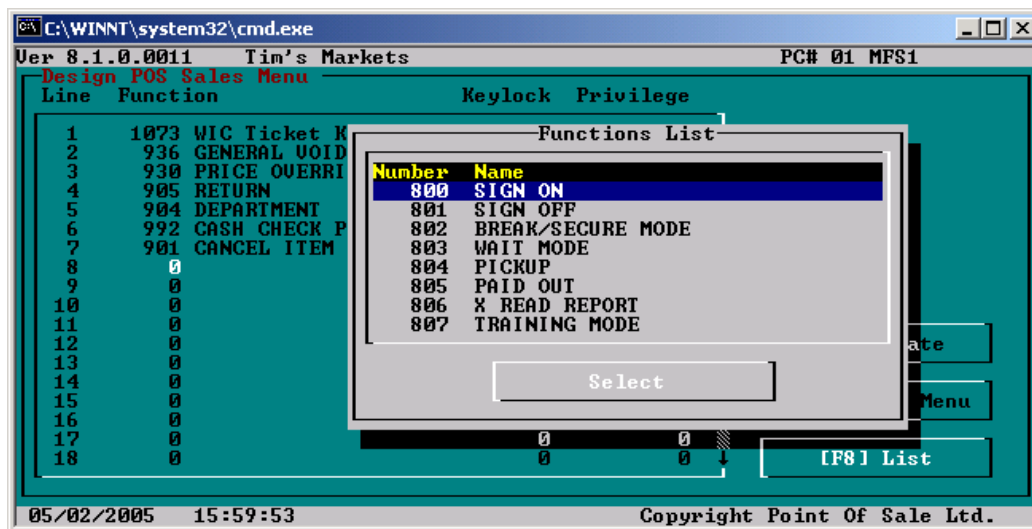
The POS Sales Menu option allows you to customize the options listed on the POS terminal when the Back Office Menu key is used in *sales* mode.

➤ **To define a new menu option**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Menu and then Sales Menu. The Keyboard Programming list appears:



- 2 Highlight the line number where you want the option to appear on the B/O (Back Office) Menu.
- 3 Press *F8 List* to show the available functions to choose from.



- 4 Scroll the list and press *Enter* to select the required function.
- 5 Press *Tab* or *Enter*. The selected function displays and the cursor moves to the Keylock field.
- 6 Type in the Keylock position required, from 1 to 5. Press *Tab* or *Enter* and type in the required cashier Privilege number.

- 7 Select *F2 Update* to record the definition.

**Note:**

When you're editing the POS Sales Menu, use the *F4 Other Menu* button to display the POS Closed Menu definition.

## POS Closed Menu

Menu options for the POS Closed Menu are the same as for the POS Sales Menu. The only difference is that options defined here are for the POS Terminal in signed-off mode.

**Note:**

When you're editing the POS Closed Menu, use the *F4 Other Menu* button to display the POS Sales Menu definition.

## POS Supervisor Menu

Menu options for the POS Supervisor Menu are the same as for POS Closed and Sales Menus. You can insert the supervisor menu option on both the POS Closed and POS Open menus.

To prevent unauthorized use of the Supervisor menu, use keylock position options and privileges, as appropriate.

## POS Graphics

One option is available from this menu:

- Screen Saver Setup - POS terminal screen savers

### Screen Saver Setup

When the POS terminal is in signed-off mode, up to ten different graphic images can be displayed. You can set different display times (delays) for each image.

The Screen Saver Setup lets you specify the sequence and display (delay) time of each image.

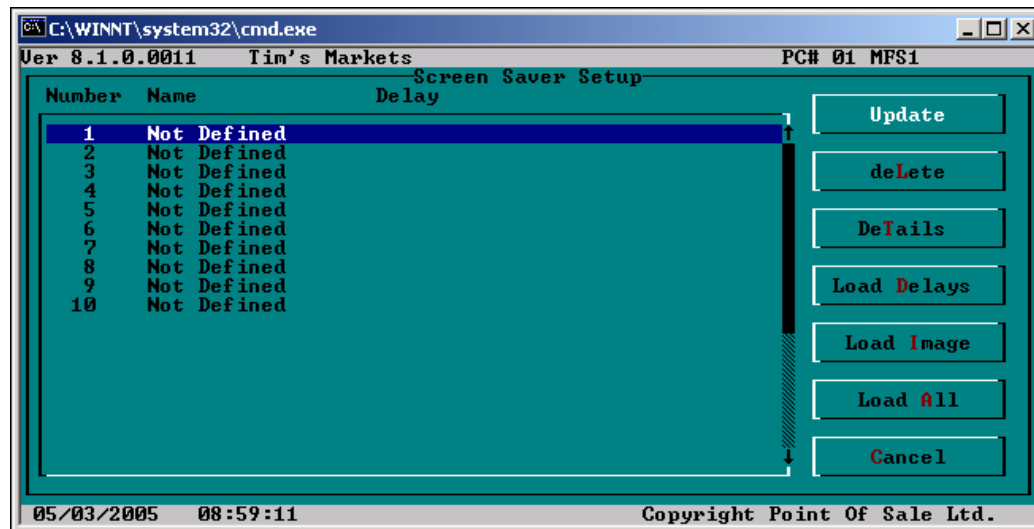
This feature supports only .bmp images, which must reside in the directory C:\PCMASTER\SEQ.

**Note**

Image size, in pixels: Minimum: 320 x 200. Maximum: 640 x 480

➤ **To add a new screen saver**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select POS Setup menu, POS Graphics and then Screen Savers. The Screen Saver Setup screen appears.



- 2 In the Screen Saver Setup screen, select Update. A list of images displays.
- 3 Select the required image. Use the *PgUp*, *PgDn*, *Up Arrow* and *Down Arrow* keys. The details screen displays.
- 4 Edit the name if required.
- 5 Enter the number of seconds to display the image.
- 6 Select *Continue*. The entry shows the information you entered.

➤ **To load delays to the POS terminal**

- 1 Select *Load Delay*.
- 2 Select Yes to confirm the load.

➤ **To load an image to the POS terminal**

- 1 Highlight the required entry.
- 2 Select *Load Image*.
- 3 Select Yes to confirm the load.

➤ **To load images and delays to the POS terminal**

- 1 Select *Load All*.
- 2 Select Yes to confirm the load.

**Note:**

The process of loading images or image details to the POS terminals could take a few minutes (dependent on the number and size of images). During loading, the POS terminals can NOT be used.

While the POS terminal is in signed-off mode, the images display according to the sequence you set up. Each image displays for the number of seconds defined.

- Press the *Sign-on* key to cancel the screen saver display.
- When the POS terminal is once again in signed-off mode, the next image in the sequence displays

# 3

---

## Front Office Parameters

*The Front Office Parameters option provides access to various End of Day parameters, PC in System Settings and CDV (Check Digit Validation) settings.*

### *In this chapter:*

**End of Day Parameters, page 3-3**

**End of Day Report Parameters, page 3-6**

**PCs In System, page 3-9**

**CDV Schemes, page 3-11**



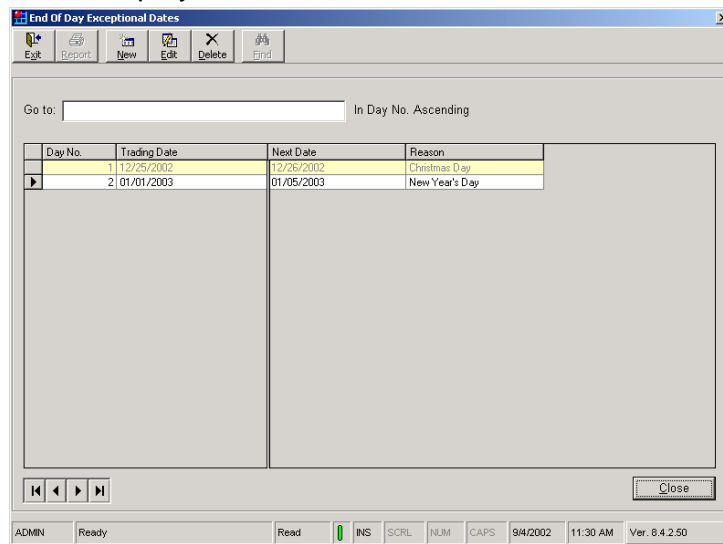
# End of Day Parameters

The End of Day Parameters enables you to set up various options relating to the End of Day process.

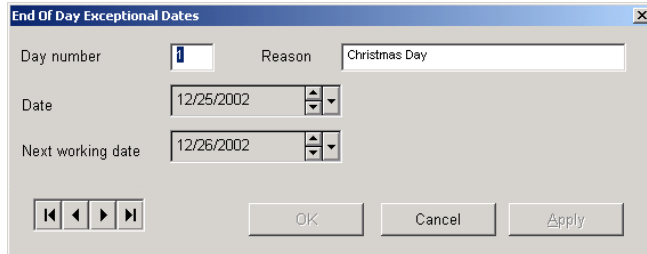
## End of Day Exceptional Dates

End of Day Exceptional Dates enables you to define which 'special' future dates you would like to run End of Day on.

- **To define exceptional dates**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, End of Day Parameters and then End of Day Exceptional Dates. The End of Day Exceptional Dates dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Double-click on the required Day number, or highlight it and select *Edit*. The End Of Day Exceptional Dates dialog box is displayed.



- 3 Set the properties and options as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
Day number	Enter the appropriate day (1 to 7) on which EOD must be run.
Date	Specify the appropriate date on which to run EOD.
Next working date	Specify the next working date.
Reason	Enter a short description explaining why the date is an 'Exceptional Date'. For Example: Leap Year or New Year.

## Automatic End Of Day Parameters

Use the Automatic End Of Day Parameters to specify the days and times to run automatic end of day.

➤ **To set automatic end of day**

- 1 From the System Administration Menu, select Front Office Parameters, End of Day Parameters, and then Automatic of Day Parameters. The Automatic End Of Day Parameters dialog box is displayed.

Auto EOD Time	No EOD
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Monday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Tuesday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Wednesday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Thursday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Friday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Saturday
23:50	<input type="checkbox"/> Sunday

If the time specified is between 00:00-07:00 then EOD will run after midnight (the day after).

OK Cancel Apply

Enter the specific Automatic EOD Times.

Specify which day(s) of the week you do not want to run automatic end of day.

Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

## End of Day Report Parameters

All data that is accumulated in the store during the course of a day is saved in a database. Parameters are defined to retrieve the required information and generate reports.

This module deals specifically with defining the reports that are generated as part of the End of Day process. The reports that are generated are also added to the print history, which enables you to retrieve daily reports at a later stage from the *Reports* menu.

For further information about reports, refer to the *Reports Reference*.

Using the procedures described below, you are able to specify for which parts of the daily process reports are to be generated.

➤ **To specify parameters for End of Day reports**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, and then End of Day Reports Parameters. The End of Day Reports Parameters dialog box is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'End of Day Reports Parameters' dialog box. At the top, there is a 'Category:' dropdown menu currently set to '(All)'. Below it is a 'Go to:' text input field followed by the text 'In Report Name'. The main area is a 'Reports List' table with the following columns: 'Report Name', 'Generate at EOD', 'Add to print history', and 'Print during EOD'. The table contains 20 rows of reports, each with a checkbox in each of the three columns. At the bottom of the dialog, there are four buttons: 'Clear Generate', 'Clear Add', 'Clear Print', and 'Close'.

Report Name	Generate at EOD	Add to print history	Print during EOD
Basket Analysis month-to-date (on end-of-week)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Branch Expenses Summary Report	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Branch Performance Report	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Coupons	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Effectiveness	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier History Sign On Report	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Over/Short Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Over/Short by Media Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Performance Daily	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Performance Monthly	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Performance Profile	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Performance Weekly	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Pickup & Loan Report	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Returns / Refunds Summary	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Sales / Items	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Scan	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Scan Report by Terminal	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Security	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Cashier Tender	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Select the report category from the *Category* dropdown list. The *Report Name* field in the *Reports List* area displays the list of all available reports for the selected category.
- 3 Type the start of a report name in the *Go to* field to select a specific report,

**Or**

Scroll down the *Report Name* list in order to select the required report.

- 4 For each report, select or clear the checkboxes, described on the following page, to determine how they will be included in the EOD process. If *Generate at EOD* is not selected, the report will not be generated.

**Note:**

*Add to Print History* and *Print during EOD* can only be selected if *Generate at EOD* has first been selected.

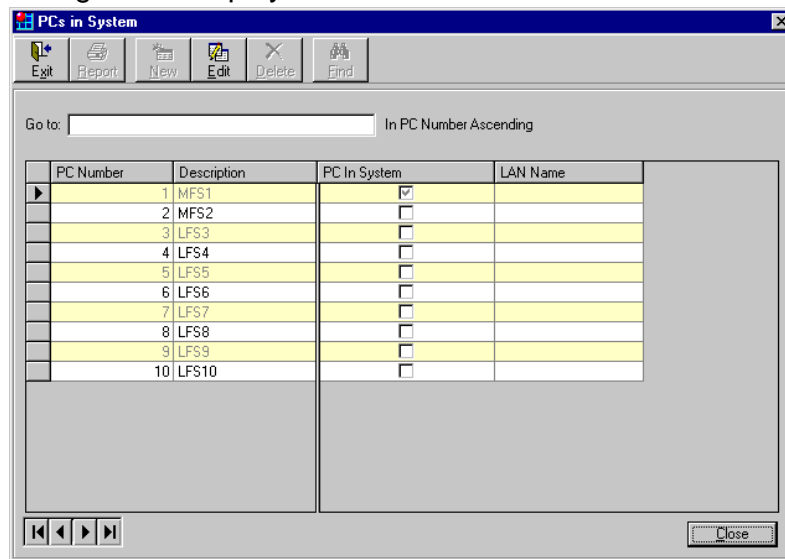
<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Generate at EOD	The report will be automatically generated as part of the EOD process.
Add to print history	The report will automatically be added to the print history archive.
Print during EOD	The report will be automatically printed as part of the EOD process.

- 5 Click *Close* to exit the dialog box.

## PCs in System

The PCs in System dialog box enables you to define which PCs are operating in the store system. The system allows up to two servers and ten PCs to be connected.

- **To define the PCs (workstations) in the system**
  - 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters, and then PCs in System. The PCs in System dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the *PC in System* checkboxes that relate to the PCs that are in the store system. *MFS1* and *MSF2* are servers. Computers with the prefix *LFS* are the computers (workstations) in the system which are not servers.

**Note:**

Clearing the *PC In System* checkbox will disconnect the PC from the store system.

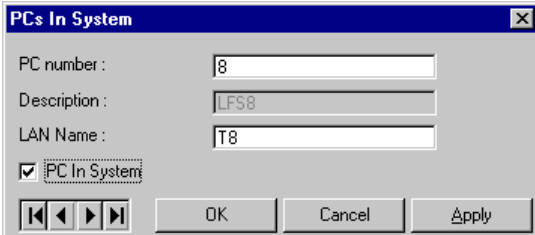
- 3 Click *Close* to exit the dialog box.

## Adding a New PC to the System

PCs can be added to the system through the PCs in System window, described on the previous page.

➤ **To add a new PC to the system**

- 1 In the PCs in System window click the *New* button. The following dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Enter the identifying information for the PC in the *PC number*, *Description* and *LAN Name* fields.
- 3 Select the *PC in System* checkbox to enable the PC as part of the store system.

**Note:**

Clearing the *PC In System* checkbox will disconnect the PC from the store system.

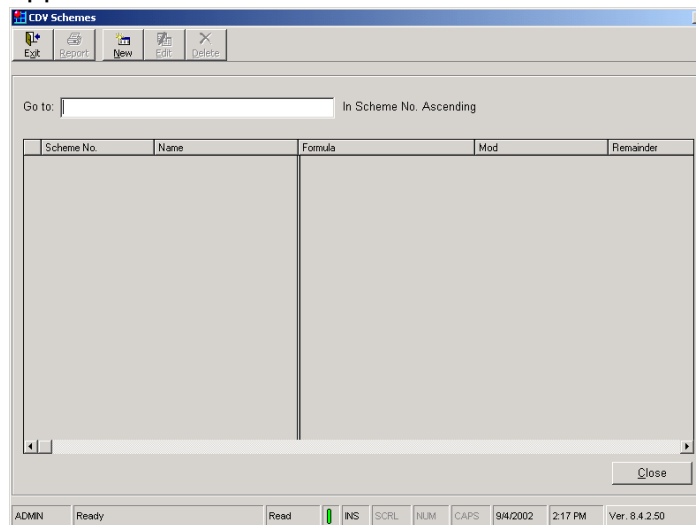
- 4 Click *OK*.

## CDV Schemes

The CDV Schemes dialog box enables you to customize Check Digit Validation Schemes for store operations. The CDVs can then be used by various functions of ISS45. For example, internal codes can be allocated a CDV scheme in System Parameters. The system allows up to 10 user-defined CDV schemes.

➤ **To define CDV Schemes**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Front Office Parameters and then CDV Schemes. The CDV Schemes list appears.



- 2 Double-click the required scheme number to edit an existing scheme or click *New* to add a new scheme. The CDV Schemes dialog box is displayed.

- 3 Set the properties as required.
- 4 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
Scheme No.	Enter the CDV Scheme number (1-10).
Name	Enter a short description, up to 8 characters.
Formula	Specify the formula, a series of 1-13 digits, representing the means by which the CDV is calculated (for example, formula 8421).
Mod	Specify the Module, the value to divide the result by.
Remainder	Specify the remainder.

# 4

---

## Preferences

*Use the Customize option to change various parts of the system's appearance to suit your liking.*

### *In this chapter:*

**Customizing Application, page 4-3**  
**Changing System Colors, page 4-3**



# Customizing Application

This option allows you to change some of the system's colors and set up toolbar options.

## Changing System Colors

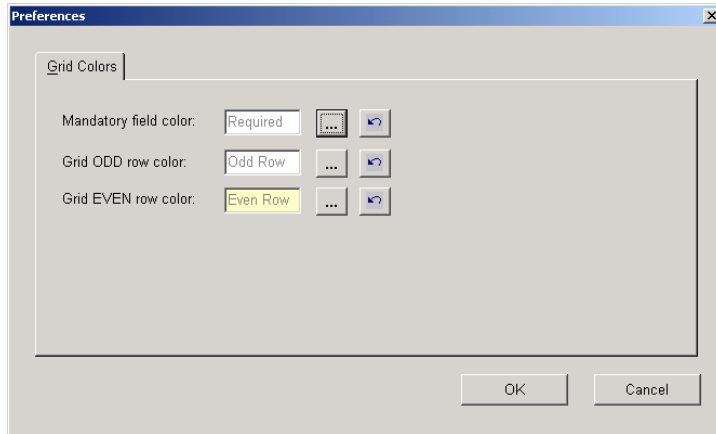
All *ISS45* data lists, or *grids* have alternate yellow and white rows for easy legibility. In addition, you can change the color of the system's mandatory fields.



You may choose any standard Windows color, or even define your own custom colors. If you don not like the results, you can always reset the system defaults.

Remember that people may spend many hours looking at data, so choose colors that are easy on the eye. We recommend using light pastel shades, grays and white.

➤ **To change grid colors**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Preferences and then Customize Application. The Preferences dialog box appears.



- 2 On the *Grid Colors* tab, click  next to the appropriate row option. The Windows color selector dialog box appears.
- 3 Select one of the standard colors, or click *Define Custom Color* to specify a custom color.
- 4 When you have selected a color, click *OK*.
- 5 To restore colors to the system default, click  next to the appropriate option.

# 5

## Menu Builder and Menu Editor

*The Menu Builder options allow you to add or delete users as well as menus. Once you have added users and menus, you can decide which users should have access to the menus you build.*

*Use the menu editor to customize the system menus to suit individual requirements. While 'regular' users are not allowed to customize their menus, they are free to add options from their menus to a personal favorites menu.*

### *In this chapter:*

**Menu Builder, page 5-3**  
**Adding, Editing and Deleting a User, page 5-4**  
**Adding and Deleting a Menu, page 5-7**  
**Linking Users to Menus, page 5-9**  
**Profile Maintenance, page 5-10**  
**Menu Editor, page 5-13**  
**About Security, page 5-13**  
**Editing a Menu, page 5-14**  
**Translating Menu Text, page 5-18**



## Menu Builder

You may want to construct specific menus for different levels of employee, or according to their job requirements.

A manager, or system administrator, for example, would most likely have full access to a complete menu, while cash office personnel would need access to the full complement of cash office utilities and related reports only.

Add or delete users and menus as required, then link them as appropriate.

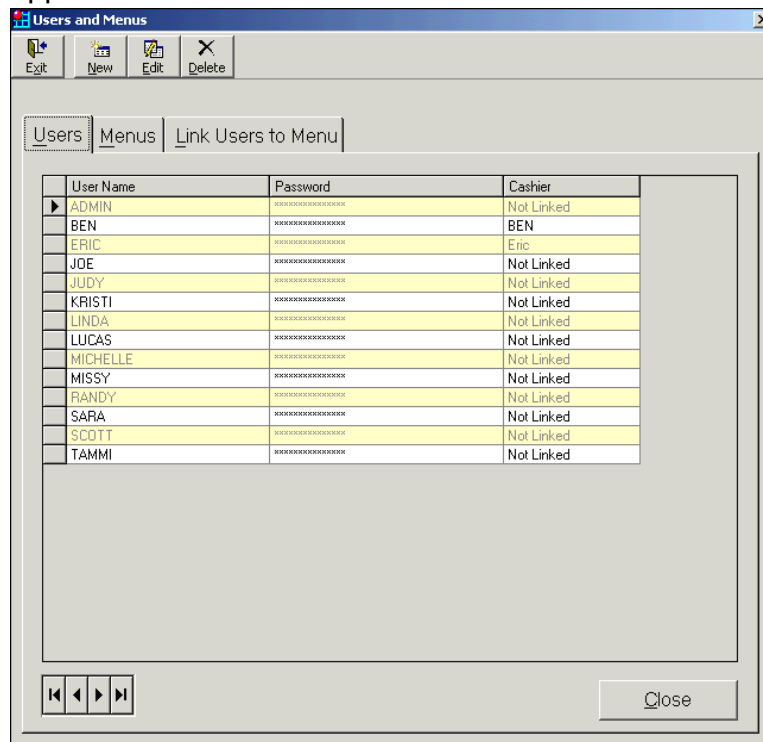
Users can access the system only when they have been added to the system and linked to a valid menu.

## Adding, Editing and Deleting a User

Add or delete system users, keeping in mind security considerations.

➤ **To add a new user**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. The Users and Menus list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The New User dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "New User". It has a title bar with a close button. The dialog contains the following elements:

- Three text input fields labeled "User Name:", "Password:", and "Confirm:".
- A checkbox labeled "Password Never Expires".
- A section titled "Select Module to Assume Decimal Places" containing three checkboxes: "Cash Office", "PLU Management", and "Promotions Management".
- A dropdown menu labeled "Cashier:" with "None" selected.
- "OK" and "Cancel" buttons at the bottom right.

- 3 Enter the user's name.
- 4 Type in and then confirm their password.
- 5 Check the "Password Never Expires" checkbox to prevent the user password from expiring.

**Note:**

If left unchecked, the General System Parameter "Password Change Every ...Days" (located in the Store \ Front Office \ System \ Security folder) will be followed.

- 6 If you want to enter dollar amounts in ISS45 Cash Office applications without entering a decimal point check the "Cash Office" checkbox. For example, if this new feature is enabled the user can key in 1,4,9,9 for \$14.99 or 5,9 for \$.59. The feature will be enabled in the following applications:
  - Loans
  - Pickups
  - Declarations

- Receipts
  - Deposits
  - ROAs
  - Paid Outs
  - Corrections
  - Adjustments
  - Inter-Department Transfers
- 7 Likewise, when entering currency amounts in PLU Management or Promotions Management applications, check the “PLU Management” and/or “Promotions Management” and the system will assume a two-place decimal and restrict decimal point usage.
  - 8 If implementing the Pocket Office Remote Authorization (RMA) module, click the Cashier field’s selection arrow and choose the cashier that is identified with this Front Office User. If Control Checks are to be resolved by Front Office users (through RPO RMA), you must associate (link) cashiers with Front Office Users. Cashier privileges will determine their authorization level for handling the Control Checks.
  - 9 Click *OK* to save.

Once you have added users, you must add a menu (if not done yet), and then link users to the menu.

➤ **To edit a user name or password**

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Users* tab.
- 2 On the toolbar, select *Edit*. The Edit User dialog box appears.
- 3 Change the users name or password as required.
- 4 Click *OK* to save.

➤ **To delete a user**

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Users* tab.
- Highlight the user to delete and on the toolbar, select *Delete*.  
Confirm the deletion.

**Note:**

You cannot delete the ADMIN user. Admin is always linked to the DEFAULT menu.

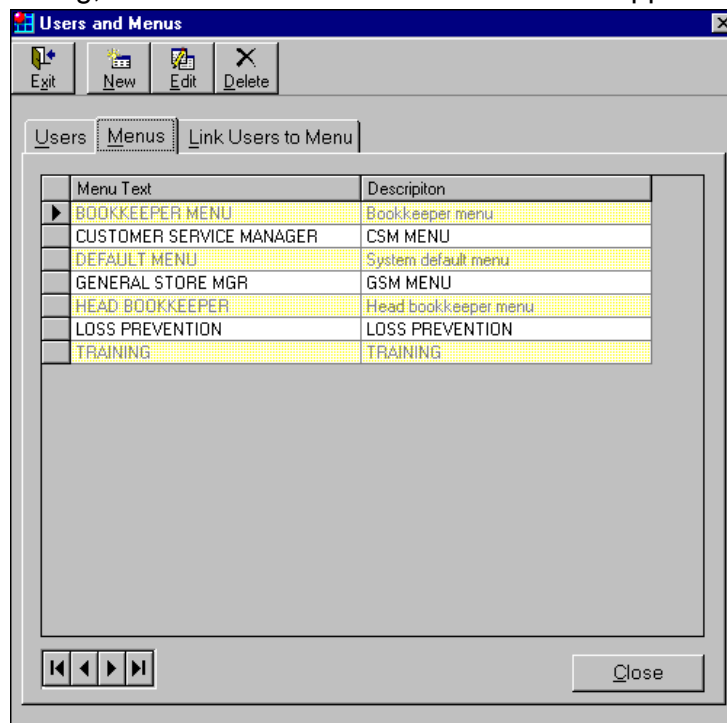
## Adding and Deleting a Menu

Add as many menus as required in your store situation. Once you have added a menu, you can link users to it and then use the Menu Editor to build the menu. If you prefer, first build the appropriate menu and then link users to it.

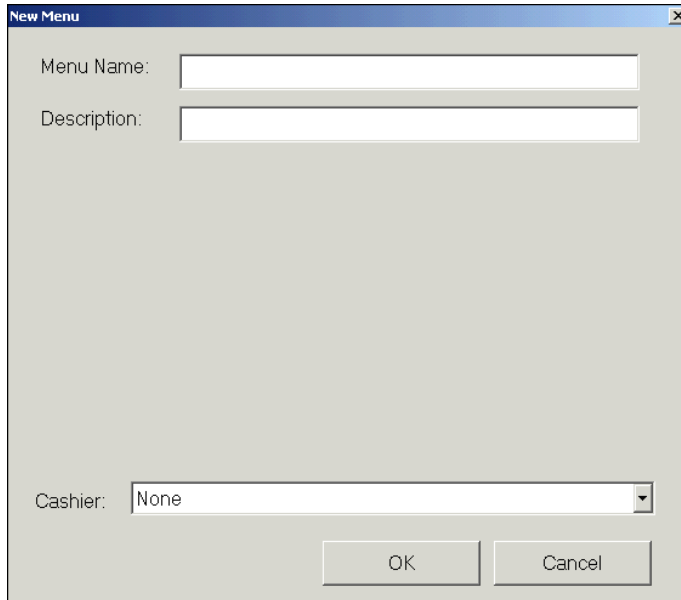
The default menu as supplied with the software CANNOT be edited or deleted. Normally, only senior personnel should be linked to this menu, as it includes all system options.

➤ **To add a new menu**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Menus* tab. The Menus list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The New Menu dialog box appears.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "New Menu". It has a title bar with a close button (X). The dialog contains the following elements:

- A text input field labeled "Menu Name:".
- A text input field labeled "Description:".
- A dropdown menu labeled "Cashier:" with "None" selected.
- Two buttons at the bottom: "OK" and "Cancel".

- 3 Enter the required menu name and a description.
- 4 Click *OK* to save.

You have now added users and menus. You can go ahead and link them together. See *Linking Users to Menus*, page 5-9.

➤ **To delete a menu**

Before you delete a menu, make sure there are no remote users logged in to it!

You cannot delete the DEFAULT menu.

- 1 On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Menus* tab.
- 2 Highlight the menu to delete and on the toolbar, select *Delete*. Confirm the deletion.

## Linking Users to Menus

You can link a user to any number of menus. Users linked to more than one menu are prompted to select a menu when they log in to Office. Once logged in, users are allowed to switch between menus to which they have been linked.

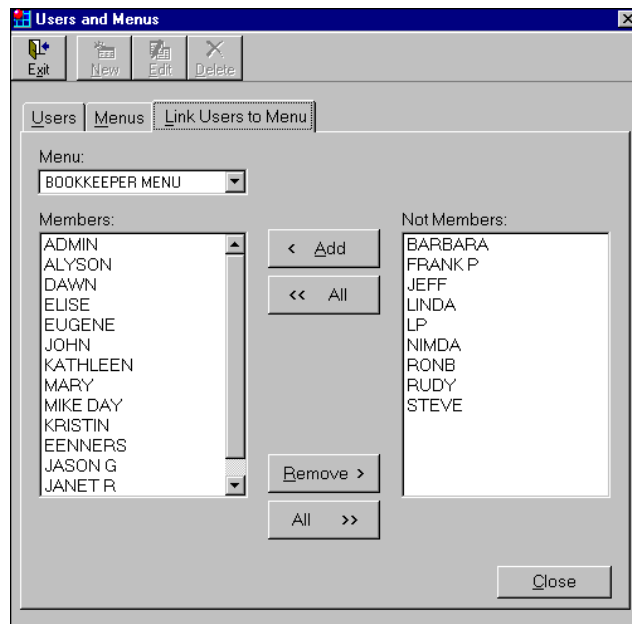
Users linked to only one menu will not see other menus, nor will they have access to any other menu.

### Notes:

1. Remember security considerations when linking users to menus!
2. You cannot edit or delete the Default menu and Admin user.

### ➤ To link a user to a menu

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Link Users and Menus. On the Users and Menus dialog, select the *Link Users to Menus* tab. The Link User to Menu dialog box appears.



**Note:**

You can link or unlink users with 'drag and drop' or with the *Add* and *Remove* buttons.

- 2 Select the required menu.
- 3 Choose the users to link. Shift-click on individual users and then select *Add*, or to link all users, select *All*.
- 4 To unlink users, choose them and then select *Remove* or *All*.

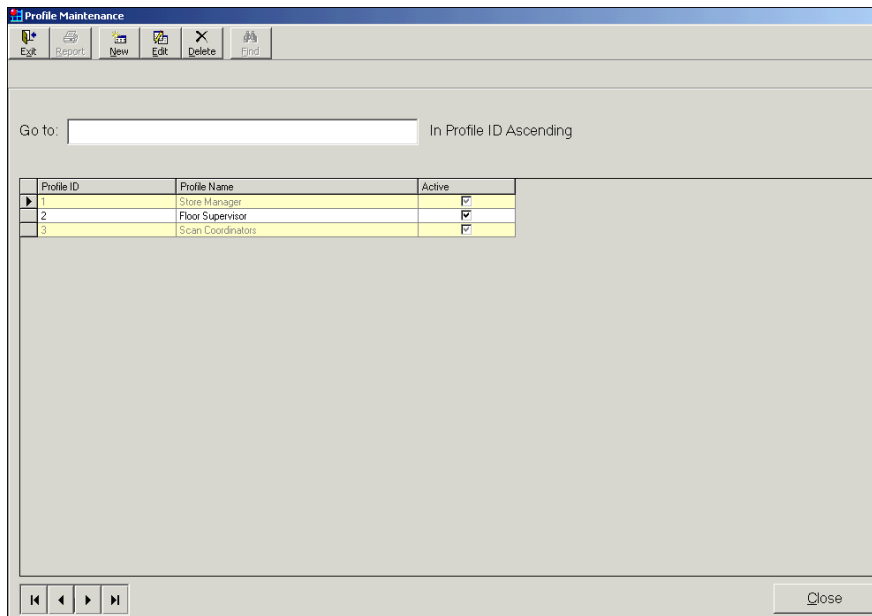
## Profile Maintenance

For sites implementing Pocket Office's Remote Authorization (RMA) Module, Profile Maintenance provides the ability to create groups of Front Office users who will be notified of specific alerts.

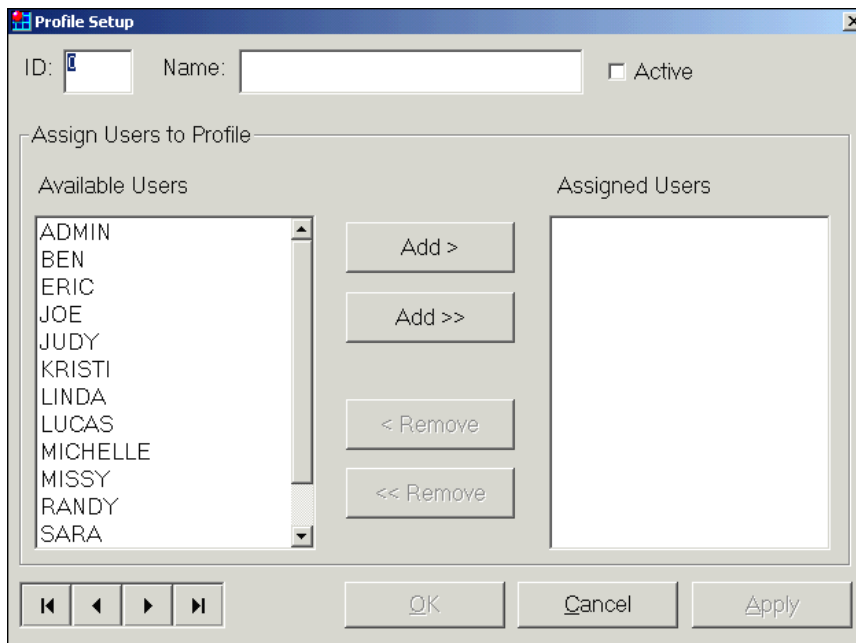
Once established, profiles are assigned to the specific alerts you wish to be sent to those hand-held computer users. (See *Linking Profiles to Alerts* in Chapter 8, Utilities & System Alerts).

➤ **To create a new profile:**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Menu Builder, and then Profile Maintenance. *The Profile Maintenance Screen displays:*



- 2 Click the **New** button. The Profile Maintenance Screen displays:



- 3 Enter a unique ID number for the profile.

- 4 Enter a description for the profile in the Name field.
- 5 Highlight a user to add to the profile from the Available Users list and click the **Add >** button.
- 6 Repeat step 5 for each user to add to the profile.
- 7 Click the **Active** checkbox to make the profile active for those alerts assigned to it.
- 8 When finished, click the **OK** button.

**Note:**

A user can be linked to multiple alert profiles.

## Menu Editor

Use the Menu Editor to construct and modify menus to suit your requirements. You can construct new menus, delete menus, and add menu options.

In the Menu Builder option, first set up menus for different employee groups, managers, system administrators, and so on. For details, see *Menu Builder*, on page 5-3.

## About Security

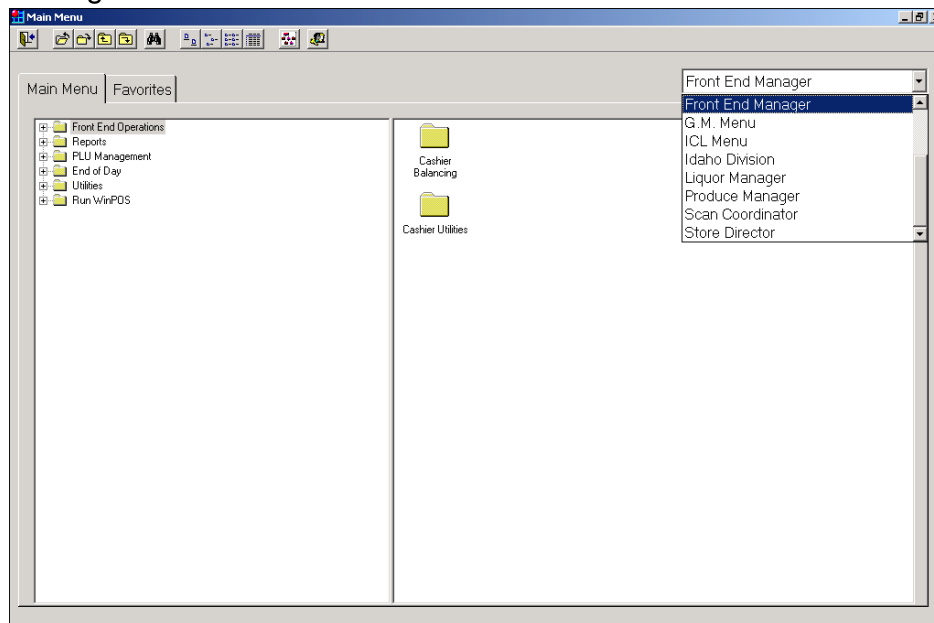
The easiest way to control access to menu options is by building menus with only those options relevant to an employee's job. You may allow a user to belong to any number of menus.


As System Administrator, you must take care not to include the Menu Builder option in user menus.

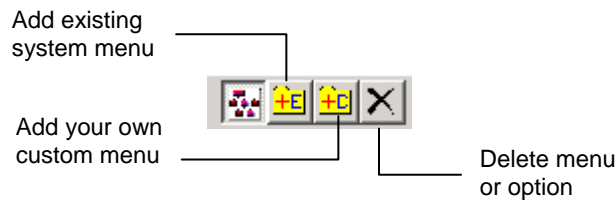
## Editing a Menu

This section contains basic instructions and guidelines for adding options to menus, editing and deleting options.

- **To add folders (menus with options) to a menu**
- 1 Once you have added a new menu in Menu Builder, open the menu dropdown on the Main Menu (*ISS45 Office*) and select the menu you want to build. In this example, the Front End Manager.



- 2 Click on the toolbar *Menu Editor* button . The menu name appears as the menu root, on the left of the menu, and the *Menu Editor* toolbar buttons become enabled.

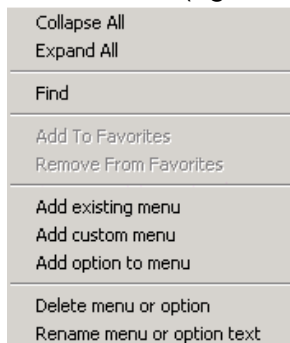


- 3 Add the required menus to the menu *root*. (Database Admin Menu). You may add existing menus as supplied with the software, or add custom menus with your own descriptions.

**Notes:**

1. The 'existing menus' contain options as defined in the system's default menu.
2. You can select individual menus, or use Shift-click and Ctrl-click to choose multiple menus.
3. You can add existing menus with 'drag and drop' from the Add Existing Menu window into the Menu Editor.


When you are in menu edit mode, use either the toolbar buttons as explained on the previous page, or the pop-up menu below (right-click on the mouse).

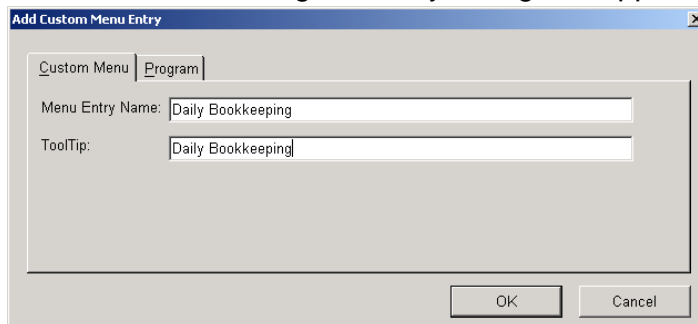


Add as many menus as required, then when finished click *Close*.

➤ **To add a custom menu**

This function adds only a menu *folder* and name; no options.  
After you have added menus, add options to the menu.

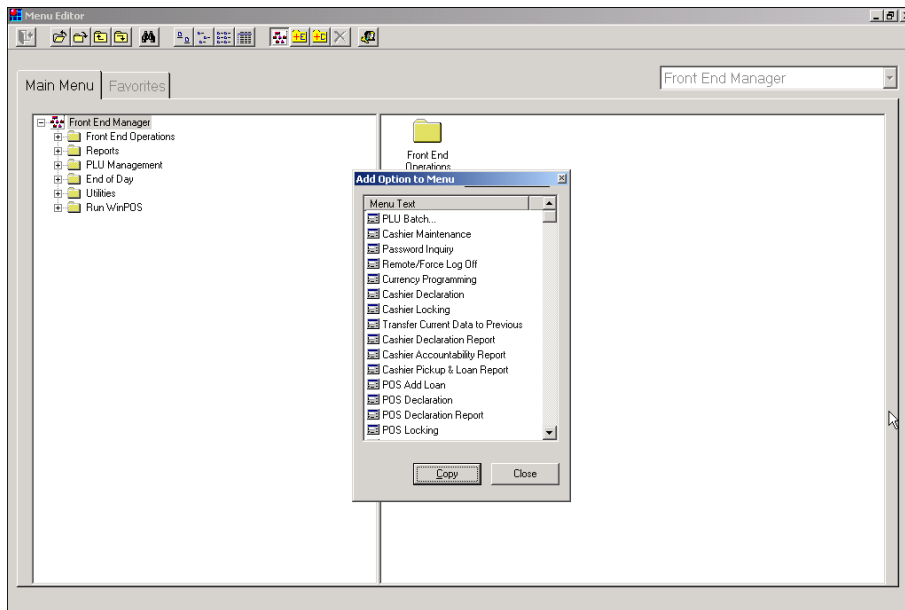
- 1 To add a custom menu, click the *Add Custom Menu* button . The Add Custom Program Entry dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the *Custom Menu* tab.
- 3 Enter the required menu text and ToolTip text and then click *OK*.

➤ **To add an option to the menu**


- 1 To add an option to the menu, first select the desired menu folder, right-click on the mouse, and then select *Add option to menu*. The Add Option to Menu dialog box appears.

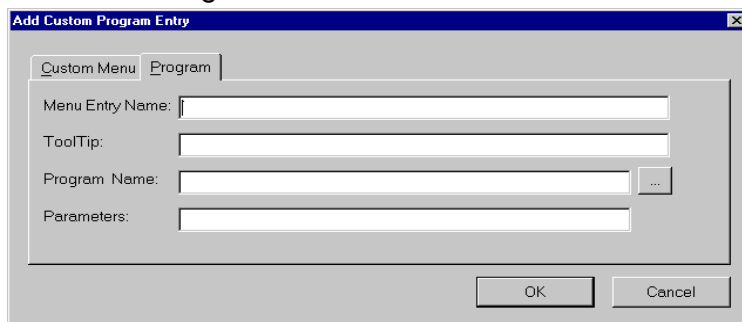



- 2 Select the required option or options. To copy them to the required folder, use *drag and drop* or click *Copy*.
- 3 Add as many options as required, then when finished click *Close*.

➤ **To add a Program or Application**


This function adds a program or application. For example, you may want the Calculator or Notepad applications added to your menu.

- 1 To add a program, click the *Add Custom Menu* button . The Add Custom Program Entry dialog box appears.
- 2 Select the Program tab.



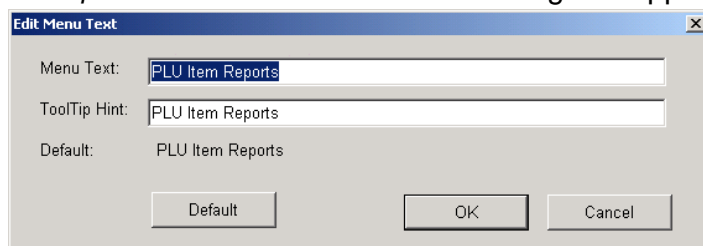
- 3 Enter the required menu entry name and ToolTip text.
- 4 In the Program Name field box, click the *Browse* button .
- 5 Select the Program you want to add to your menu.
- 6 If necessary, enter the required parameters text and then click *OK*.

➤ **To delete a menu or option**

- 1 Select the menu or option.
- 2 Click the *Delete* menu or option button . If you are deleting a menu that includes options, you are prompted to confirm.

➤ **To rename menu or option text and ToolTips**

- 1 To rename menu or option text, first select the required menu or option, right-click on the mouse, and then select *Rename menu or option text*. The Edit Menu Text dialog box appears.



**Note:**

Click the **Default** button to restore system default text.

- 2 Change the text as necessary and click *OK*.

## Translating Menu Text

Use the Language Utilities options to translate all system messages, menu options and strings.

For details, see Chapter 6, Language Utilities.

# 6

## Language Utilities

*ISS45 lets you operate with your language of choice. Use these options to specify languages, as well as translate from the default language, English to whichever language you specify.*

*Once you have specified languages, you can translate the entire system to the desired language.*

### *In this chapter:*

**System Language, page 6-3**

**Changing the System Language, page 6-5**

**Translating Strings, page 6-6**

**Translating Messages, page 6-8**

**Translating Menu Names, page 6-10**

**Translating Control Names, page 6-12**

**Translating Report Strings, page 6-14**

**Change String, page 6-16**



# System Language

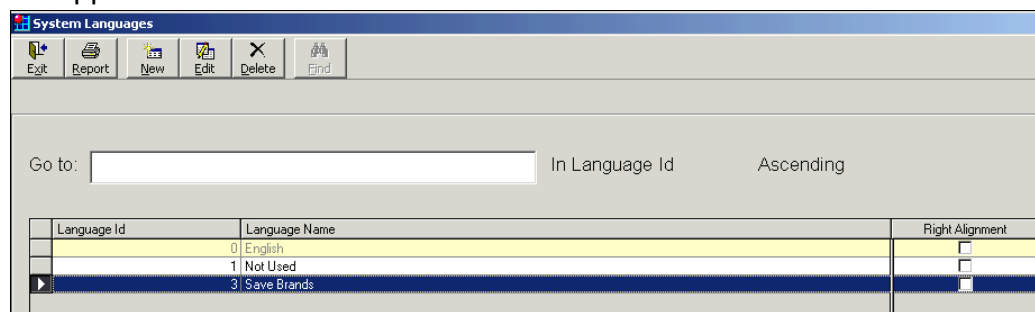
Use this option to add languages other than English, which is the system default.

## Adding a System Language

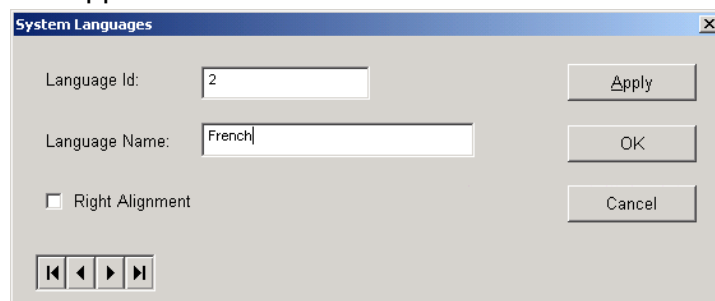
Add as many languages as required.

➤ **To add a new language**

- 1 From the System Administration Menu, select Language Utilities and then System Language. The System Language list appears.



- 2 On the toolbar, select *New*. The System Languages dialog box appears.



- 3 Enter an ID number.

**Note:**

ID number 0 is English, the system default. You can neither edit nor delete English.

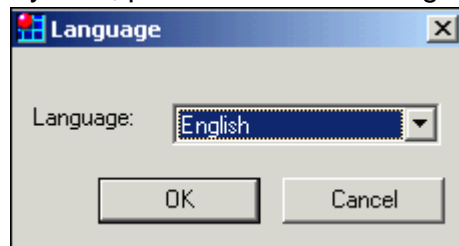
- 4 Type in the language name.
- 5 For Middle Eastern languages, select right alignment option.
- 6 Click *OK* to save.

# Changing the System Language

You may switch the system language at any time.

➤ **To switch languages**

At any time, press *Ctrl+L*. The Language dialog box appears.



- 1 From the dropdown list, select the required language and click *OK*. The system now displays with the selected language.

## About Translating

Translation of text to other languages can increase the length of text by 30 percent or more. There is often limited space for displaying translated text, like in control buttons, dropdown lists, status bars and toolbar buttons. Keep descriptions clear and short.

When the system was designed and programmed, extra space was (as far as possible) given to text fields.

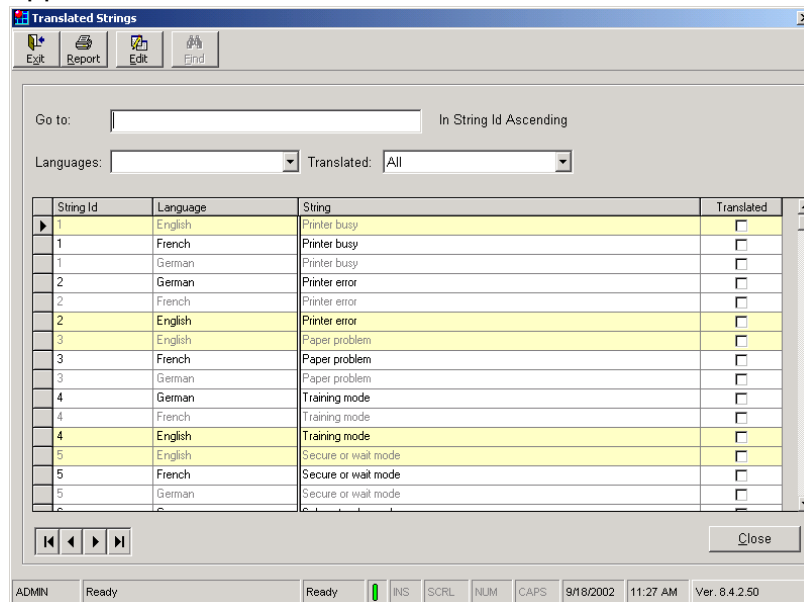
It is always a good idea to check your work as you progress, ensuring that your translations do not run over the available space.

# Translating Strings

Use this option to translate the entire system's text fields. This includes text for report names and all text labels within dialog boxes (forms) and most other system components.

➤ **To translate Strings**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Strings. The Translate Strings list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English strings, with the selected language below. These strings appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired string. The Translate Strings dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Translate Strings". It has two main sections. The first section, "English Source", contains an "ID" field with the value "2" and a "String" field with the text "Printer error". The second section, "Translate to", contains a "Language" dropdown menu currently set to "Not Used" and an empty "String" field.

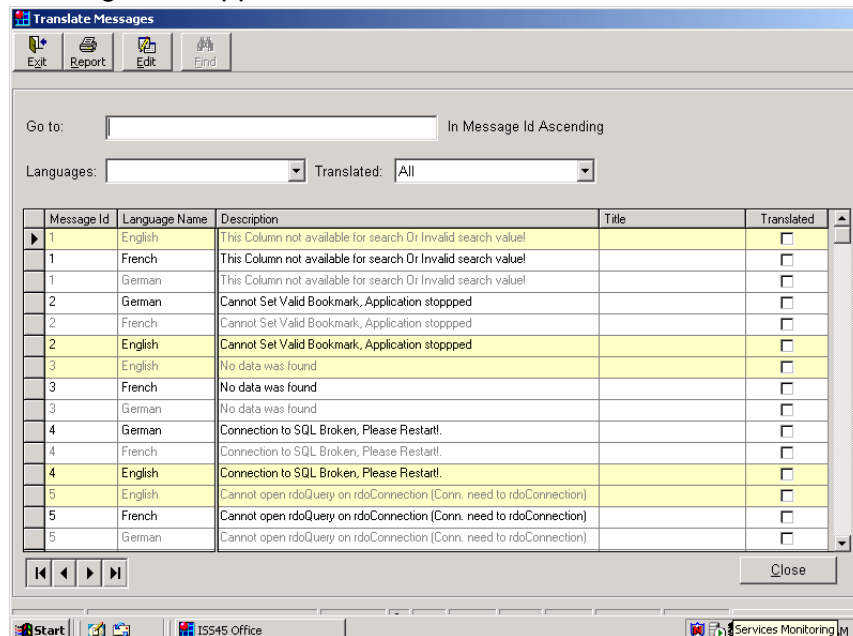
- 4 Enter the required string in the selected language.
- 5 Click *OK* to save.

## Translate Messages

All system messages; error, warning and informative, are listed and can be translated. You can also translate message box title text.

### ➤ To translate Messages

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Messages. The Translate Messages list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English messages, with the selected language below. These messages appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired message. The Translate Messages dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Translate Messages". It is divided into two main sections: "English Source" and "Translate to".

**English Source:**

- ID: A text box containing the number "6".
- Title: An empty text box.
- Text: A text box containing the message "Low Range must be less than high range".

**Translate to:**

- Language: A dropdown menu currently showing "Not Used".
- Title: An empty text box.
- Text: A text box containing the message "Low Range must be less than high range".

- 4 Enter the Title (required message box). This is optional - you may prefer to leave the default system name in error message titles.
- 5 Enter the message text translation in the selected language.

**Note:**

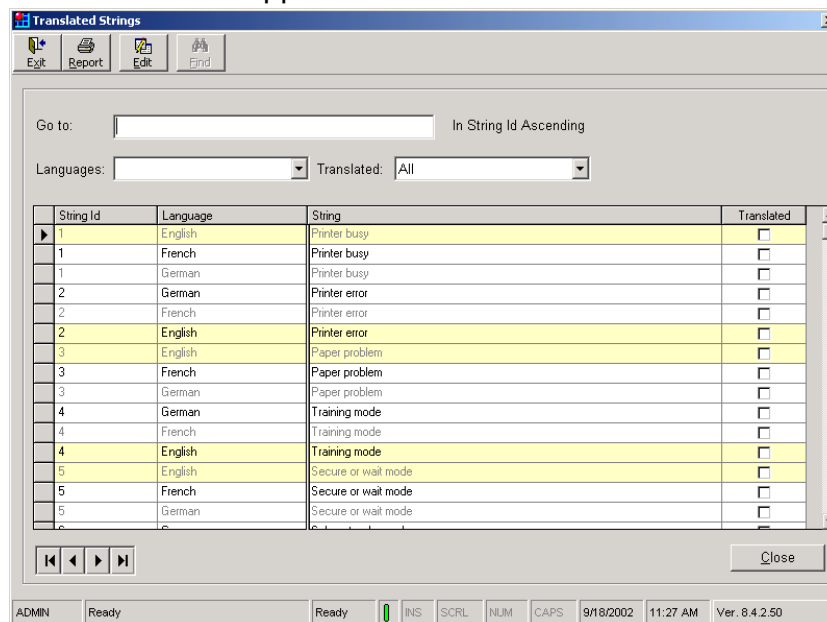
Some message text contains variables (indicated by the "%" sign and a value). This means that when messages appear, the percent sign is replaced with a relevant value. For example; "Cashier %2 is signed off!". Take care not to overwrite the variable, and ensure it is in the correct position in the translated text.

- 6 Click OK to save.

## Translating Menu Names

This utility lets you translate menu (folder) names, as well as their ToolTips.

- **To translate menu names**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Menu Names. The Translate Menu Names list appears.



- 2 From the Language dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English menu names, with the selected language below. These menu names appear in English until you have translated them.
- 3 Double-click on the desired menu name. The Translate Menu Names dialog box appears.

**Translate Menu Names**

**English Source**

ID:

Tooltip:

Menu Name:

**Translate to**

Language:

Tooltip:

Menu Name:

- 4 Enter the menu name translation.
- 5 Enter the appropriate ToolTip in the selected language.
- 6 Click *OK* to save.

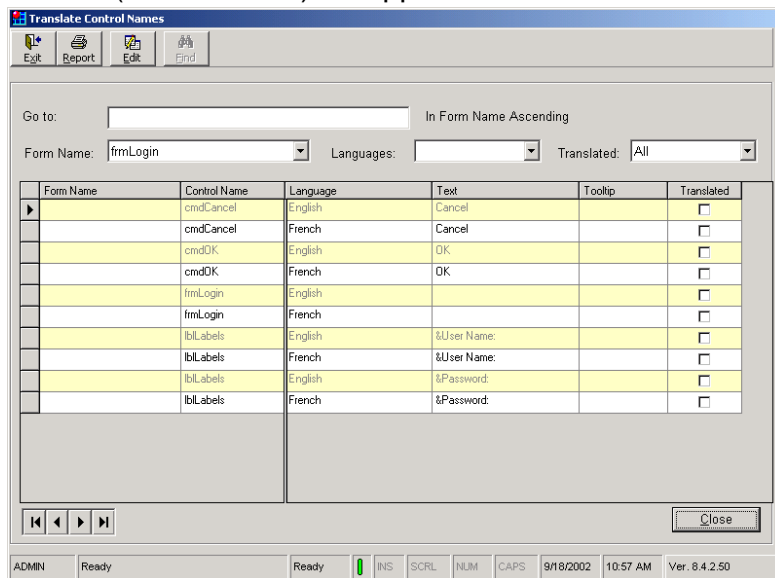
## Translate Control Names

You can translate text of any form (dialog box), including its control buttons and ToolTips.

The easiest way to translate a form is described here. Another way is to use the Translate Strings option. See page 6-6

➤ **To translate Control Names (Forms Text)**

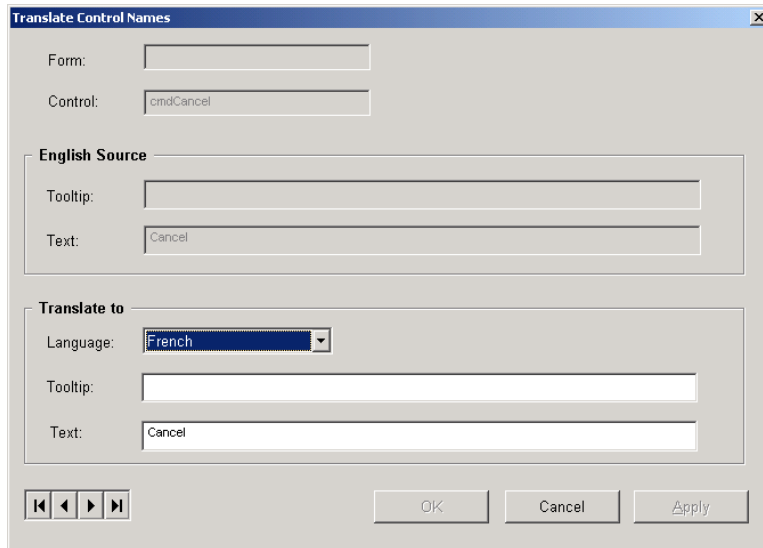
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Controls. The Translate Control Names (Form Names) list appears.



Text for all components of the selected form is displayed.

- 2 From the Form Name dropdown list, select the form name (e.g., Alerts Log) that you want to translate.
- 3 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English form name, with the selected language below. The form name appears in English until you have translated it.

- 4 Double-click on the Form Name to translate. The Translate Control Names dialog box displays.



- 5 Enter the ToolTip and translated text in the selected language.

**Note:**

Some dialog text and buttons have shortcut (accelerator) keys, like *Apply*. When translating, remember to insert "&" immediately to the left of the accelerator letter. For example; &Apply.

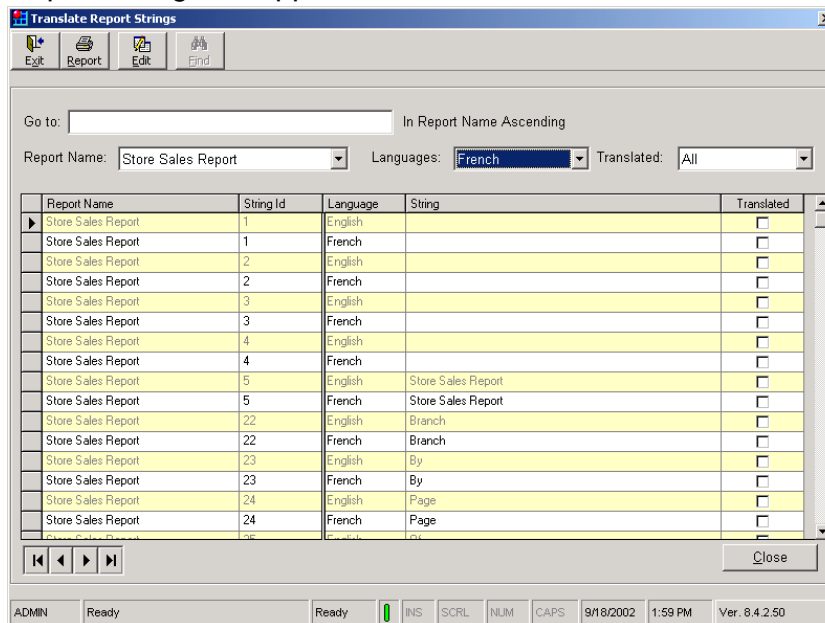
- 6 Click *OK* to save.

## Translate Report Strings

All ISS45 Reports are listed and can be translated. You can translate the report names as well as the field descriptions.

### ➤ To translate Report Strings

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Translate Report Strings. The Translate Report Strings list appears.



- 2 From the Report Name dropdown list, select the report (e.g., Store Sales Report) that you want to translate.
- 3 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to translate to. The list displays the English report strings, with the selected language below. The report strings appear in English until you have translated it.
- 4 Double-click on the Report string to translate. The Translate Report Strings dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Translate Report Strings". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Report Name:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- English Source:** A section containing:
  - ID:** A text box containing "5".
  - String:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- Translate to:** A section containing:
  - Language:** A dropdown menu with "French" selected.
  - String:** A text box containing "Store Sales Report".
- Navigation:** A set of four arrow buttons (Home, Left, Right, End) at the bottom left.
- Buttons:** "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply" buttons at the bottom right.

- 5 Enter the required string in the selected language.
- 6 Click OK to save.

## Change String

Use this utility to perform global translations throughout the system, including text for report names, field labels, menus, system messages and controls.

### ➤ To Change Strings

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Language Utilities and then Change Strings. The Change String dialog box appears.

The screenshot shows the 'By String Change' dialog box. The 'Change String' section has a 'From:' field with the text 'Cashier Coupons Report' and an empty 'To:' field. The 'By Criteria' section has a 'By Tables:' group with radio buttons for 'Strings', 'Menus', 'Messages', 'Controls', and 'Report Strings' (which is selected). There are also radio buttons for 'All'. To the right is a 'Languages:' dropdown menu currently set to 'French'. At the bottom are 'Change String' and 'Close' buttons.

- 2 In the Change String area:
  - Enter the appropriate string to translate in the *From* field.
  - Enter the text translation in the *To* field.

- 3 In the By Criteria selection area:
  - Select the *By Tables* radio button to enable you to select specific areas of the system to apply the translation. Select the desired checkbox(es).
  - Select the *All* radio button to apply the translation to all areas of the system.
- 4 From the Languages dropdown list, select the language you want to apply the translations to.
- 5 Click *Change String* to perform the translation.



# 7

## Technical Support

*Options in Technical Support are for use by field engineer or dealer support personnel only.*

### *In this chapter:*

**Master File Create,**  
page 7-3

**Store Open Service,**  
page 7-3

**Clearing the System's  
Transaction Data,**  
page 7-4

**Transaction Handling  
Parameters,** page 7-5

**Software Key  
Information,** page 7-6

**QuickDex Definition,**  
page 7-7

**System Integrity,**  
page 7-14

**System Integrity  
Parameters,** page 7-14

**QDX Files Checksum  
Table,** page 7-18

**Load/Refresh QDX Files  
to POS,** page 7-20

**Terminate a Crashed End  
of Day,** page 7-22

**Technical Parameters,**  
page 7-22

**SQL Maintenance,**  
page 7-24

**Rsession Parameters,**  
page 7-31

**Code Distribution  
Parameters,** page 7-32



## Master File Create

Master File Create (Build PLU File from Host File) is used to build a PLU database from a host file. A host file is similar to a batch that is placed into a temporary directory, from where it is imported as a PLU database.

This utility is used only by Technical Support.

**!** **WARNING:**

The new PLU database will overwrite any existing PLU database in the system, so it is important that any existing QDX database files are zipped. The zipped files can be extracted after the Master File Create has been performed, and copied into the new database, if required.

## Store Open Service

This option is used in new stores only, to clear all training transactions, sales and reports from the system. Databases are left intact.

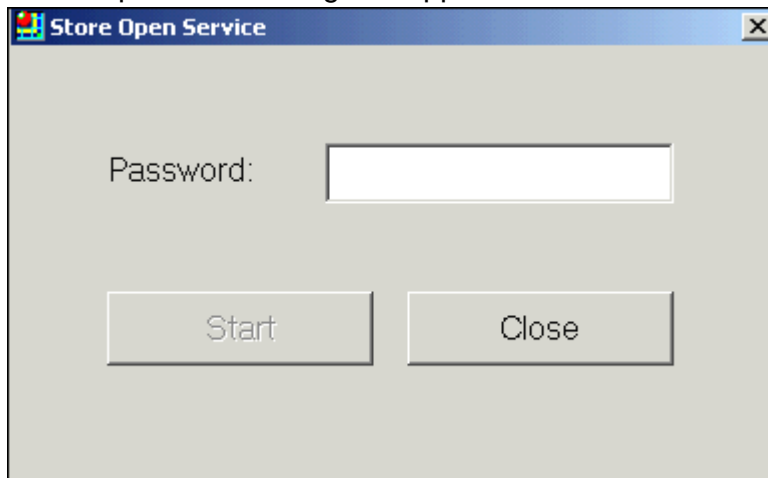
## Clearing the System's Transaction Data

Running this utility clears ALL sales and transaction data from the system. You can use this option as often as you like DURING TRAINING.

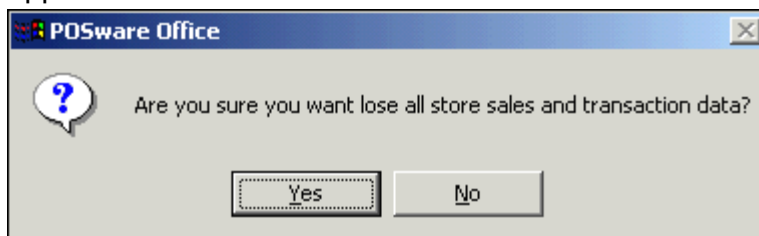
You MUST clear all transaction data before a new store goes live.

➤ **To clear system data**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, and then Store Open Service. The Store Open Service password dialog box appears.



- 2 Enter the password and click *Start*. A warning message appears.



- 3 If you are absolutely sure, select *Yes*; otherwise select *No*.

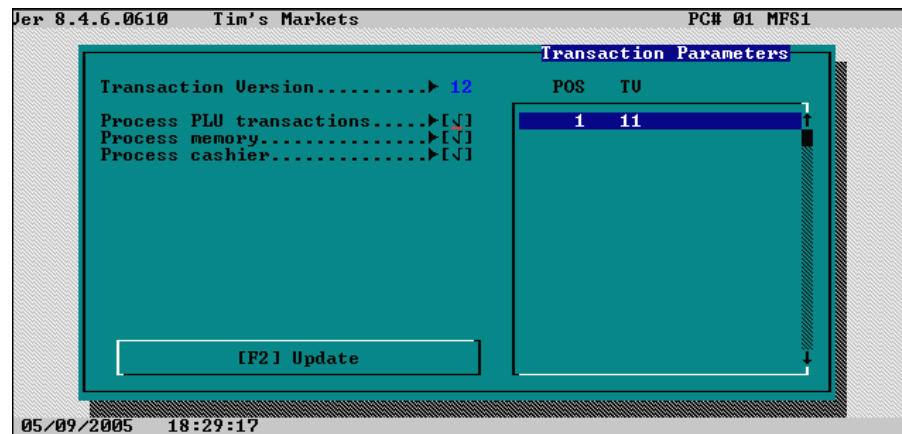
# Transaction Handling Parameters

This option allows you instruct the system how to handle transactions from POS terminals in the event of the POS terminal are off-line at End of Day.

**Note:**

If you choose not to check the options available, data for the current day is lost from any POS terminal not communicating with the servers when End of Day is run.

To access the option, from the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, and then Store Open Service. The Transaction Parameters screen displays:



The screen contains the following parameter settings:

Parameter	Description
Transaction Version	The transaction version number, which automatically increments with every End of Day process. The version number is informative only - it cannot be edited.
Process PLU transactions	Check this option if you want PLU movement updated.
Process Memory	Check this if you want to print on-line reports with the current day's data.

Parameter	Description
Process Cashier	Check this if you want to keep cashier totals in the system. Any amounts that appear over today, will be short the next day, and vice versa.

Press *F2 Update* to record the definition. At the prompt, select *Yes* to accept changes, or *No* to reject changes.

## Software Key Information

Software Key Information displays plug serial number and availability of specific optional functionality.

Flag ID	Description	Selected
1	Query Language	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	SIL	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
3	APT Vision Value I/F	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
4	InfoScan	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
5	PINacle I/F	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
6	Concord I/F	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
7	Catalina I/F	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
8	Pay Path I/F	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
9	ISS45 EPS/Ingenico	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
10	Frequent Shopper Option	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
11	Express Bonus Coupon Option	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
12	Express Safe Account Option	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
13	ISS45 Advanced Promotions	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
14	Signature Capture	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
15	RoundHouse	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
16	Microtrax Payments	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
17	Trickle Feed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
18	V8 Option	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
19	Third Party EPS	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## QuickDex Definition

This option serves to define and update QuickDex files and QuickDex General Parameters.

File size is determined by the length of the record and the number of records. Multiply the record length and the number of records to determine the initial allocated size of the file. A file can be extended by increasing the maximum number of records. A reduction in file size results in an illegal QuickDex file. Any change to QuickDex parameters must be followed by a restart in order to update the changes.

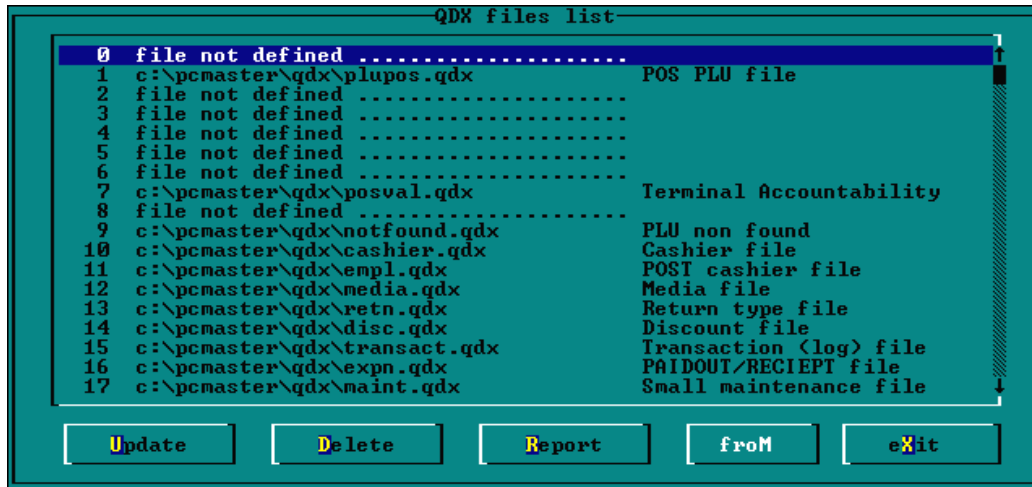
Up to 250 QuickDex files can be defined.

To access the option, from the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, and then QuickDex definition. The QDX/DRVfile menu displays.



## Define QuickDex Files

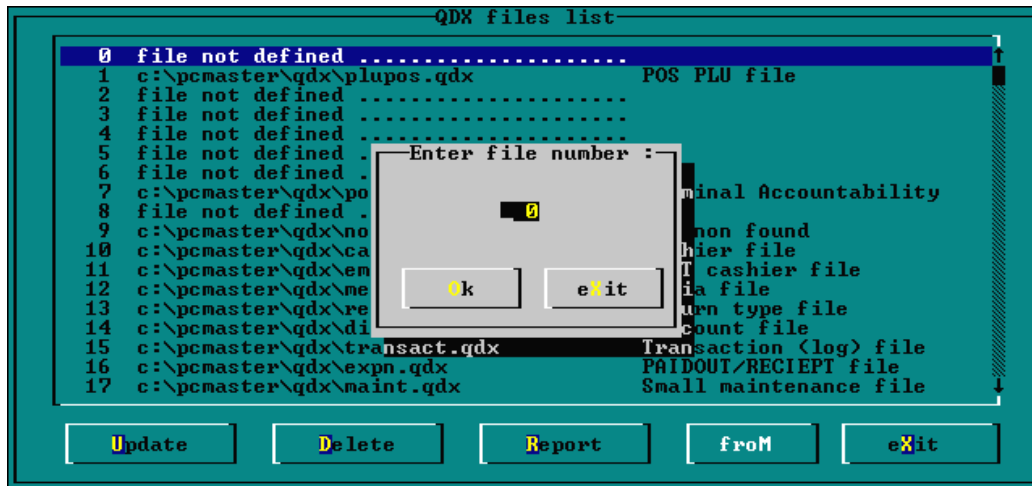
To define or update QuickDex files select Define QDX Files (F1) from the QDX/Drvfile menu. The QDX Files screen displays.



This screen lists the QuickDex files defined in the system, showing the path, name and description of each file.

➤ **To search for a file**

- Use the PgUp, PgDn, Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys.
- For fast search, use the froM function: Select froM (Alt+M). A search window displays.



Type in the number of the file you want to locate and press *Enter* twice. The required file displays at the top of the screen.

## Defining a QuickDex File

To define a QuickDex file, highlight one of the blank lines in the QDX Files screen, where the message 'file not defined' displays. Select the *Update* function (*Alt+U*). The QuickDex File Parameters screen displays.

```

Qdex files setup      File name : Q-DEX.PRM      File # 2
Remark               : ██████████
QDEX file name      :
File type           : Index [↓]  [ ] Wrap around
QDEX record size    : 0
Key length          : 0
Key offset in record : 0
QDX flag offset     : 0
Maximum records     : -1
Block size          : Auto [↓]
Split percent       : - 0 - [↓]
Relative linked file : 9999
[ ] Guaranteed WRITE
[ ] Fill file with ZERO when created (Similar to q-empty /z??)
DRUFILE entry number : 0
  <[↓] Write local, [ ] Mask backup, read 0, Write 0, Backup 0 >

[ ] Use SUPER INDEX for this file
Super index file #  : 255   Name :

Update  eXit  Output file  Redirection table  QDX files
  
```

Fill in the parameters as explained in the following table.

Field	Description
Remark	Enter any remark or description in this field. Remarks have no effect on the execution of QuickDex files.
QDEX File Name	Path name and file name.
File Type	Specify the file type for this file. To accept the default Index, press <i>Enter</i> . To select another type, press the <i>Right Arrow</i> . A drop-down list opens. Highlight the required option, and press <i>Enter</i> . The possible types are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Index</li> <li>• Relative</li> <li>• FIFO</li> <li>• Relative Expansion</li> <li>• Super Index</li> </ul>

Field	Description
Wrap Around	This defines a cyclical file for FIFO files only. Check this parameter (by pressing the <i>Space Bar</i> ) to prompt when the file is full, leave blank to continuously loop file.
QDEX Record Size	Number of bytes per record. Mandatory.
Key Length	Length of the record key, in bytes.
Key Offset in Record	Starting location of the key in the record (starting from 0).
QuickDex Flag Offset	Location of the QuickDex reserved flag (1 byte). The flag can be located anywhere in the record.
Maximum Records	Mandatory. Depends upon user requirements.
Block Size	Block size in bytes. Select a size from the drop-down list (multiples of 512). To accept the default Auto (automatic allocation), press <i>Enter</i> .
Split Percent	Determines what percentage of block space is used before a block is split. Select a percentage from the drop-down list.
Relative Linked File	File number of the file containing information about the PLU file.
Guaranteed WRITE	Flush every write command to the disk (slow but secure option).
DRVfile Entry Number	Routing information.
Use Super Index for This File	Check this parameter if a super index containing pointers to QuickDex indexes should be used for this file. Then enter the number of this file and its path and name.

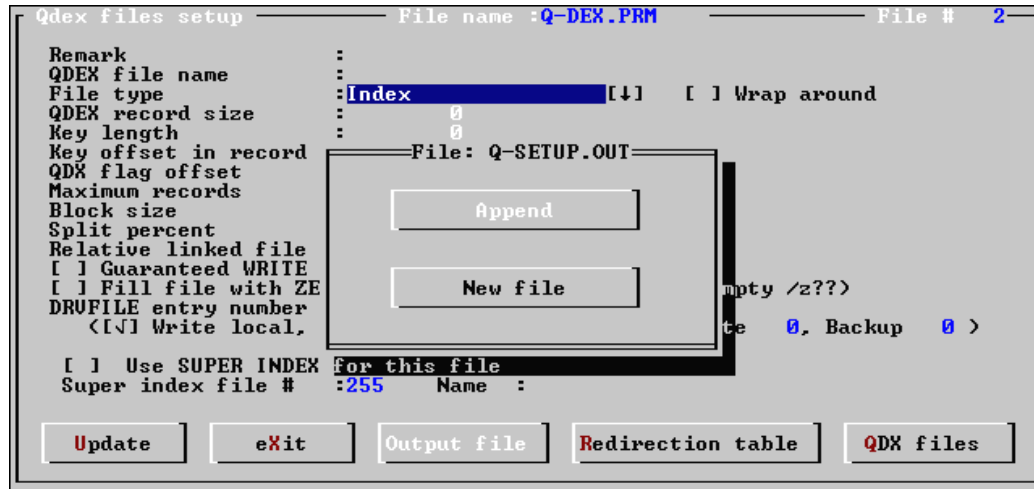
Select *Update (Alt+U)* to record the definition.

## Other Functions

This function allows you to export a QuickDex file. It builds a file named Q-SETUP.OUT containing the specified QuickDex file.

This file can be merged to another QuickDex file, in any other system.

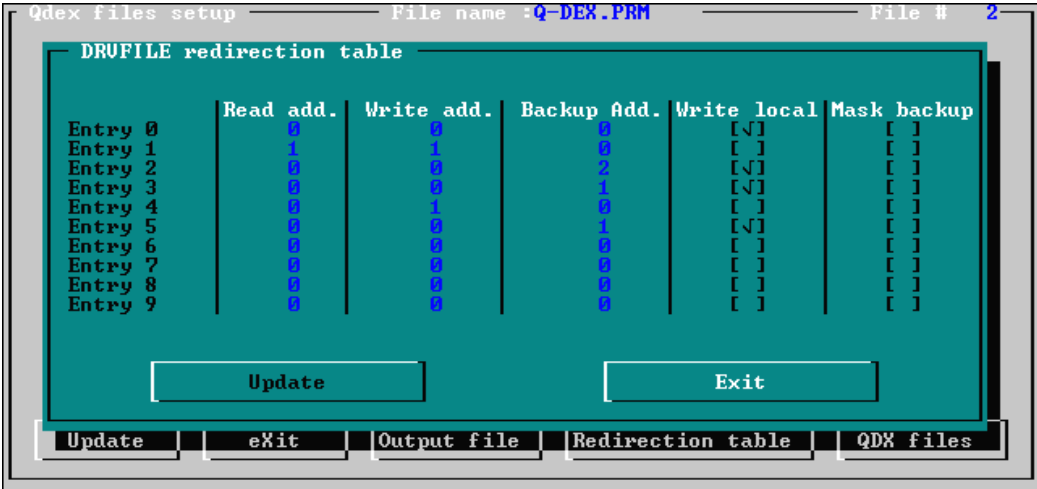
Select the *Output file* function (*Alt+O*). The following window displays.



To append this QuickDex file to an existing output file, select *Append*. To create a new output file, select *New File*. This deletes an existing output file.

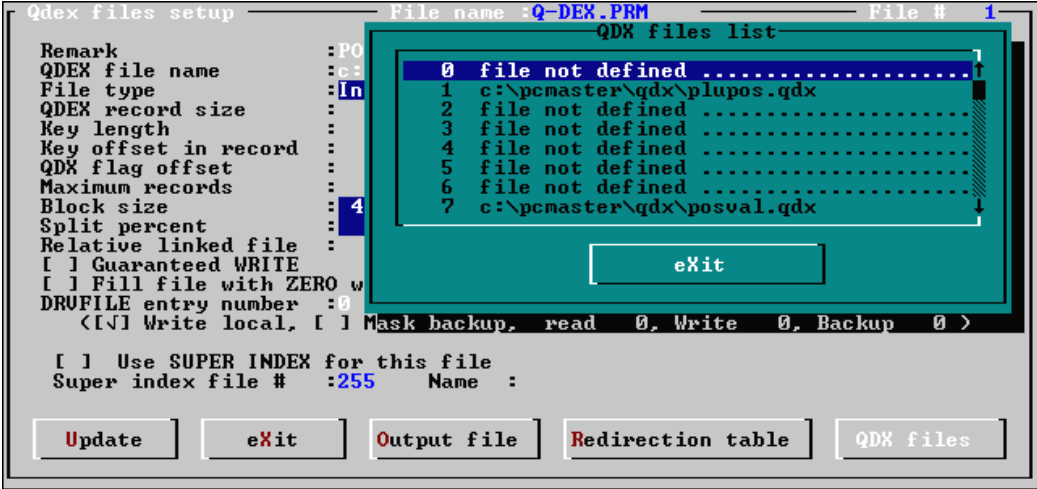
## Redirection Table

This function displays the DRVFILE redirection table. Select the *Redirection table* function (*Alt+R*). The following window displays.



### QDX Files

This function displays a list of the QuickDex files in the system. Select the QDX files function (Alt+Q). The following window displays.



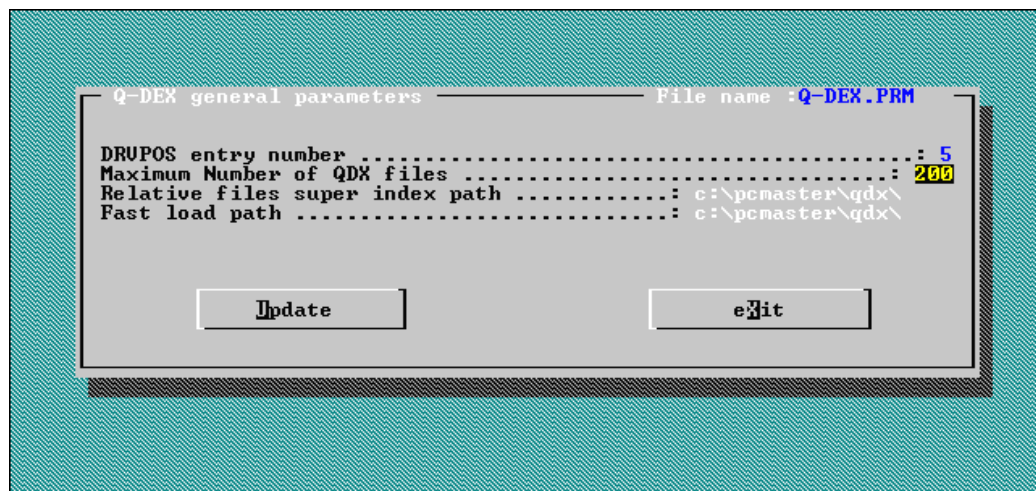
You can page through this list, using the PgUp, PgDn, Up Arrow and Down Arrow keys.

## Define QuickDex General Parameters

This option serves to set a number of general parameters for QuickDex.

DRVPOS is the device driver interface between the software application and the resident drivers. Each resident driver has an entry number to DRVPOS where the location of the driver is defined. DRVPOS eliminates the use of many software interrupts.

To access the general parameters option, select General Parameters (F2) from the QDX/Drvfile menu. The QDX General Parameters screen displays.



Fill in the parameters as explained in the following table.

Field	Description
DRVPOS Entry	This field displays the value 5 and may not be changed.
Maximum Number of Files	Maximum number of QuickDex files the file server can handle.
Relative Files Super Index Path	Path to the super indexes.
Fast Load Path	Path to the load indexes (containing QuickDex pointers for files).

## **System Integrity**

System Integrity is intended as a protection against file corruption and to ensure correct prices and other data in the system at all times.

Use this option to define how the System Integrity option must perform. You can also specify which QDX files must pass a checksum process during End of Day.

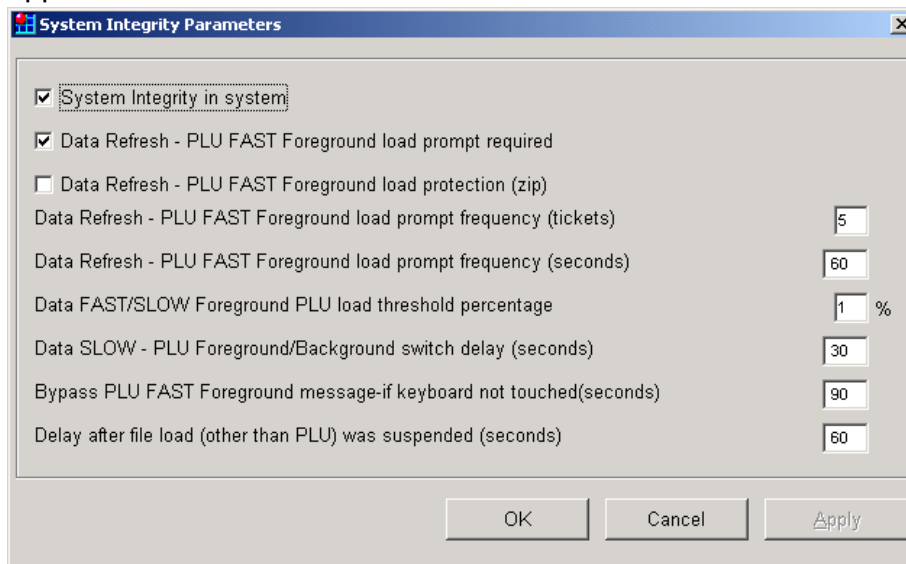
System Integrity also safeguards data when a POS terminal has been working off-line (after End of Day has been done), and is then reconnected. The system will then refresh ALL the POS terminal's data files.

### **System Integrity Parameters**

This option allows you to define the System Integrity options and parameters for the system.

➤ **To set System Integrity**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then System Integrity Parameters. The System Integrity Parameters dialog box appears.



- 2 Set the options and parameters, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
System Integrity in system	Select this parameter to enable System Integrity. (To allow checksum and data files refresh.)

Parameter	Description
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt required	Select this parameter if a cashier prompt is required. A <i>foreground</i> load will occur if the Keyboard is not touched for 'n' seconds. A <i>foreground</i> load is fast, <i>background</i> is slow.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load protection (zip)	The system will zip the POS terminal's PLU file and start a <i>fast block load</i> . This could take fifteen minutes on 130,000 active PLUs. If loading fails, the zipped file will be reused again.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt frequency (tickets)	Specify how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in <i>tickets</i> . The available range is 0 to 99.
Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt frequency (seconds)	Specify how often the cashier prompt (for Data Refresh – PLU Fast Foreground load) should display, in <i>seconds</i> .
Data FAST/SLOW Foreground PLU load threshold percentage	The POS terminal checks active records and compares with the MFS. If a difference of 'n' percentage is found, the PLU file is zipped and a fast block load starts. If a cashier is logged on, a prompt (see parameter <i>Data Refresh – PLU FAST Foreground load prompt required</i> ) recommends to the cashier to perform a fast block load. You can allow the cashier to override this prompt. (See the <i>Bypass</i> parameter below.) Enter the required percentage difference. If the checksum fails, and the difference is less than the percentage you specify, the system will use the slow (foreground) load, and then switch between foreground and background depending on keyboard activity. If the difference is greater than the specified percentage, the fast load will be used.
Data SLOW-PLU Foreground/Background switch delay (seconds)	Enter the number of seconds of keyboard activity and inactivity, before a file load switches from foreground to background (and vice versa).

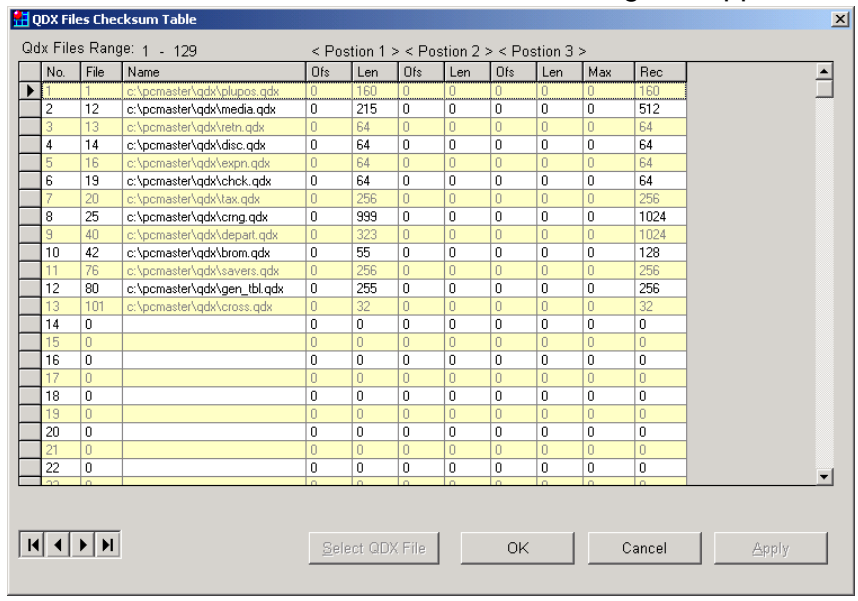
<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Bypass PLU FAST Foreground message - if keyboard not touched (seconds)	Enter the number of seconds of keyboard inactivity, after which the prompt begins to display again.
Delay after File Load (Other than PLU) was Suspended (seconds)	This parameter relates to the number of seconds to wait before data refresh is resumed (for all files apart from the PLU file) after the cashier suspends Data Refresh.

## QDX Files Checksum Table

Use the QDX Files Checksum Table to select the required files for checking, and specify how you want them checked.

➤ **To set QDX Files Checksum Table**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then QDX Files Checksum Table. The QDX Files Checksum Table dialog box appears.



- 2 Highlight the required file and press *Enter* to select it.
- 3 Move the cursor to the Offset (Ofs) field and enter the required value.

- 4 At the Length (Len) field, enter the required length.

**Note**

You can check up to three fields in each file.

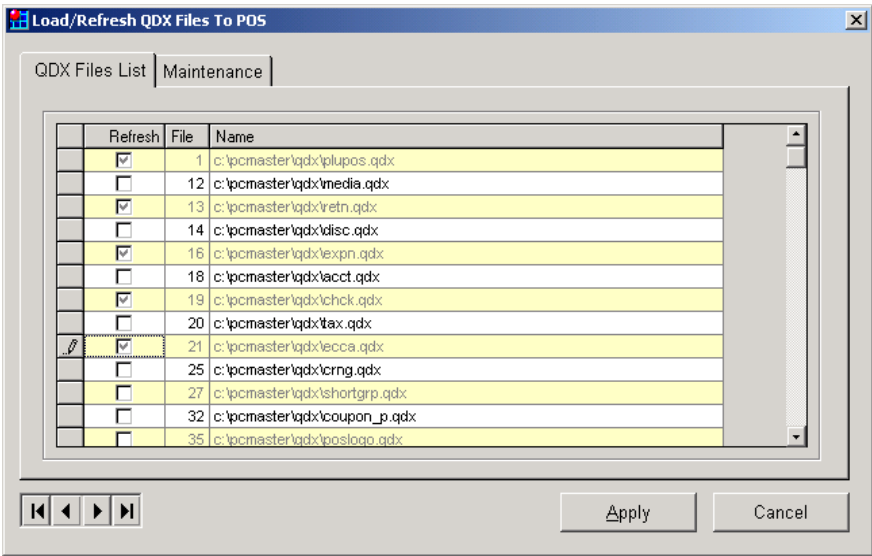
- 5 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

# Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS

This option allows you to immediately load or refresh the QDX files to all or selected POS terminals.

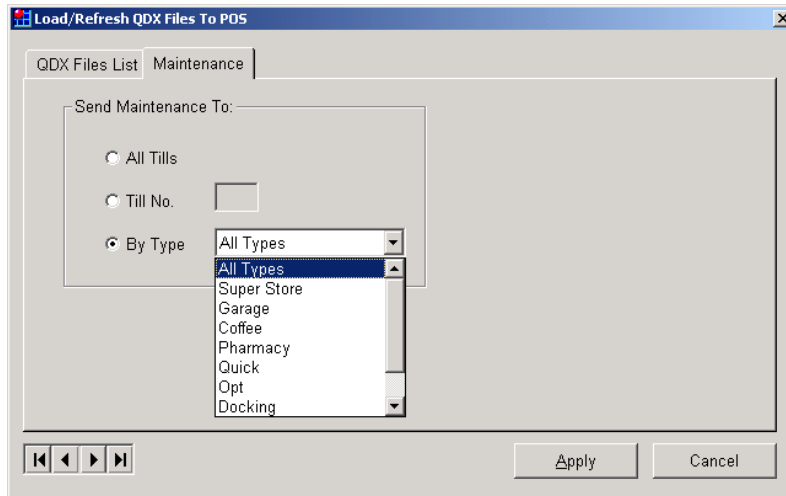
➤ **To load/refresh QDX Files to POS**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support, System Integrity, and then Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS. The Load/Refresh QDX Files to POS tabbed dialog box appears.



- 2 Select the checkboxes for the required QDX files to be sent to the POS terminal(s).

- 3 After you have checked the appropriate QXD files, select the *Maintenance* tab. The Maintenance tab is displayed, showing the options available for sending maintenance to the POS terminal(s).



- 4 In the *Send Maintenance To:* area, you can select the *All Tills* radio button to send maintenance to all tills; select the *Till No.* radio button to send to a specific till; or select the *By Type* radio button to send to a group of tills.

**Note:**

Refer to *Chapter 2, POS Setup*, in this guide, for details on Till Types.

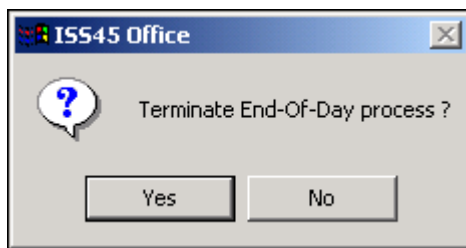
- 5 Click *Apply* to immediately send the QDX maintenance to the POS terminal(s).

## Terminate a Crashed End of Day

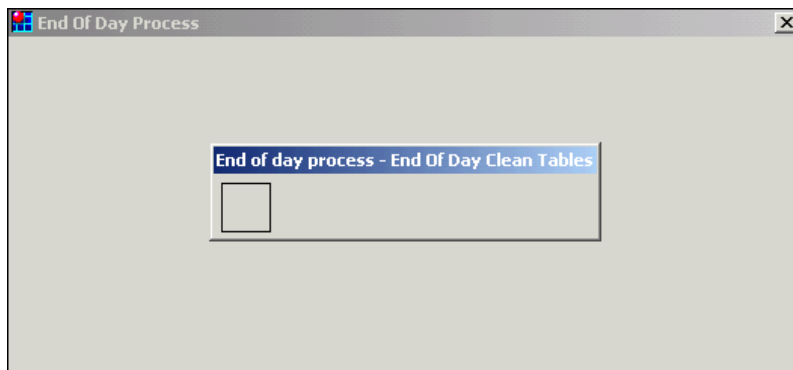
This option provides the means to properly terminate the End of Day Process and refresh the End of Day Tables.

➤ **To terminate a stalled End of Day process**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Terminate a Crashed End of Day. The confirmation window displays.



- 2 Click Yes. The termination process is executed through a process window.



- 3 When finished you will be returned to the Main Menu.

## Technical Parameters

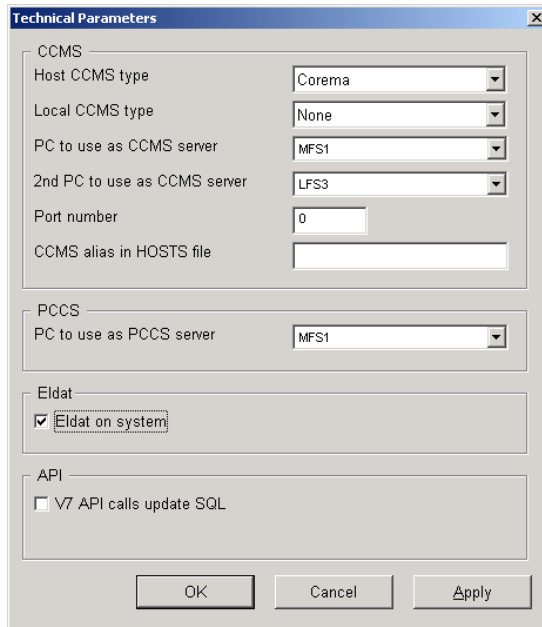
Technical parameters relate to various hardware/software configurations that may be used by your store.

**Note:**

These parameters can also be set within General System Parameters. See Chapter 1 **System Parameter Tree** for more information.

➤ **To set Technical Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Technical Parameters. The Technical Parameters dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Enter the appropriate data in the parameter fields, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
CCMS area:	
Host CCMS type	Select the data warehousing service from the following dropdown list: None Corema Fry's VIP Club OEM

Parameter	Description
Local CCMS type	Set this parameter through the General System Parameter Tree. Refer to <i>Chapter 1, System Parameter Tree</i> for parameter details.
PC to use as CCMS server	Select the PC through which two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
2 <sup>nd</sup> PC to use as CCMS Server	Select the PC through which two-way information between the store and data warehousing service is to be channeled, in the event that the primary server fails (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
Port Number	Specify the port connection number.
CCMS alias in HOSTS file	Enter a text description of the PC server. <b>Note:</b> The alias can be retrieved from the HOST file. The alias, together with the PC's IP address, is store in the HOST file.
PCCS area:	
PC to use as PCCS server	Select the PC to be used as the PCCS comm's servers (e.g., MFS1, MFS2 or LFS3).
Eldat on system	Select this parameter if Eldat Shelf-edge Labels are used in the store.
V7 API calls update SQL	Select this parameter to update both QDX and SQL PLU databases when third party applications are used.

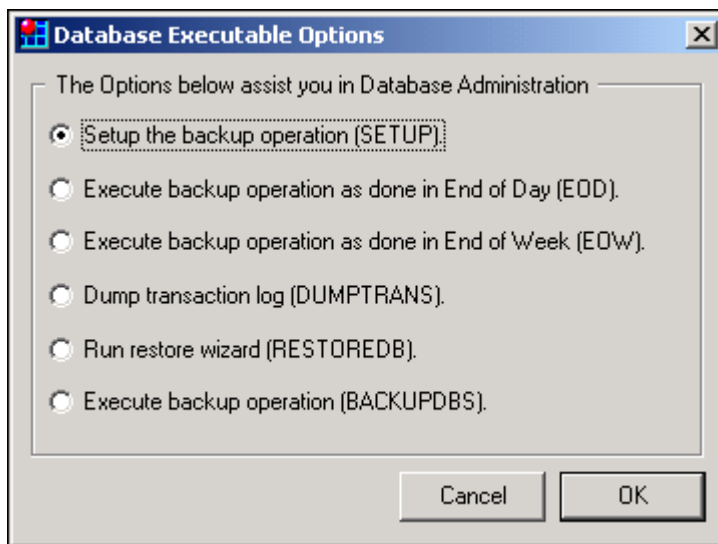
## SQL Maintenance (Sqlmnt)

The Technical Support "Sqlmnt" (SQL Maintenance) folder contains the following Microsoft SQL Server functions that can be performed within ISS45 (without having to be executed through SQL Server Enterprise Manager):

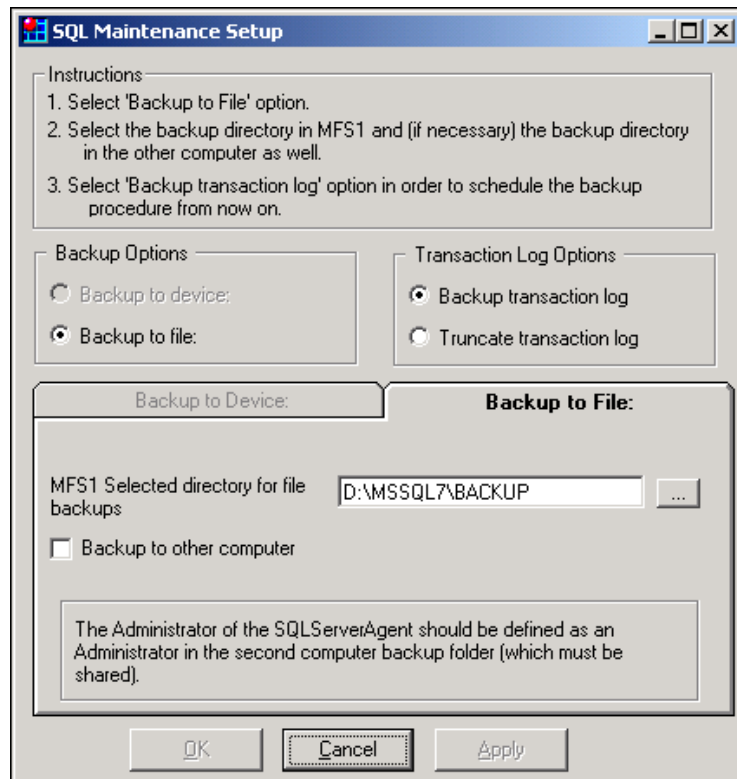
- Backup Setup (with folder creation)
- End of Day Backup
- End of Week Backup
- Transaction Log Dump
- Restore Wizard
- Database Backup


➤ **To setup the backup operation**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Sqlmnt. The Administrator password is requested.
- 2 Enter the password and click *OK*. The Database Executable Options window is displayed.



- 3 With the first option (Setup the backup operation) selected, click *OK*. The SQL Maintenance Setup screen appears with the default backup directory displaying:



- 4 To change the default backup folder, click the Ellipsis  button. The Browse for Folder window displays:



- 5 Browse to the location to use as the backup folder or click the **New Folder** button to create a new folder. Enter in the name to assign the folder and press **Enter**.
  - 6 To backup to another computer, click the “Backup to other computer” checkbox. Click the Ellipsis  button. Browse to the location to use as the backup folder on the other computer or click the **New Folder** button to create the new folder. Enter in the name to assign the folder and press **Enter**.
  - 7 Click **OK** twice close all open windows.
- **To simulate an End of Day (EOD) or End of Week (EOW) backup**
- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Sqlmnt. The Administrator password is requested.
  - 2 Enter the password and click *OK*. The Database Executable Options window is displayed.
  - 3 Click (select) the “Execute backup operation...” radio button for either EOD or EOW and click *OK*. The operation is executed as the SQL Maintenance Utility window displays its progress:



- 4 SQL Maintenance is performed and the backup zip files are placed in the folder specified in the "Setup the backup operation" option. When finished, you are returned to the Main Menu.

➤ **To dump the Transaction Log**

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Sqlmnt. The Administrator password is requested.
- 2 Enter the password and click *OK*. The Database Executable Options window is displayed.
- 3 Click (select) the "Dump transaction log" radio button and click *OK*. The SQL Maintenance Utility is performed you are returned to the Main Menu.

➤ **To run the Restore Wizard and restore a database backup**

**Note:**

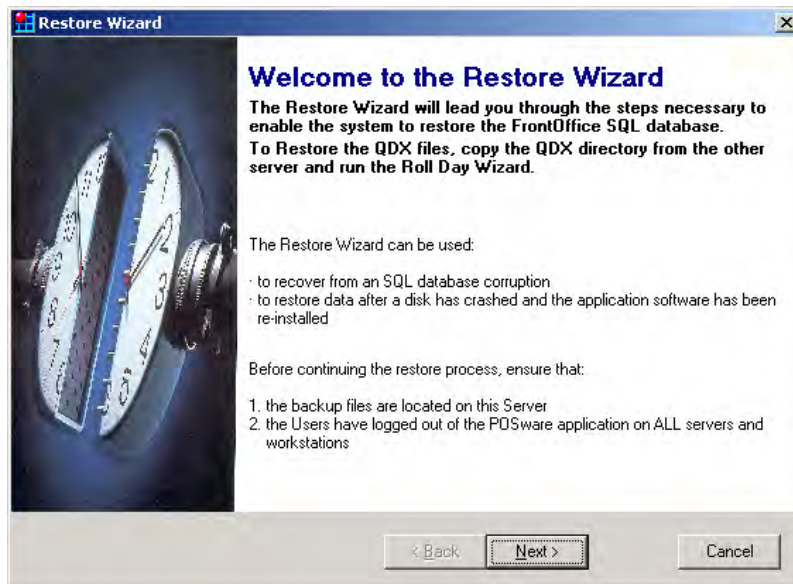
Use the following steps to recover from a corrupted database or after reinstalling ISS45.

- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Sqlmnt. The Administrator password is requested.
- 2 Enter the password and click *OK*. The Database Executable Options window is displayed.

**Note:**

Confirm that backup zip files are located on the server and that all users have logged out of all Front Office applications on all servers and POS Workstations.

- 3 Click (select) the "Run restore wizard" radio button and click *OK*. The Restore Wizard Welcome Screen is displayed.



- 4 Click *Next*. You are prompted to confirm the location of the Database and Transaction Log backup files.
  - 5 If necessary, click the Ellipsis  button and browse to the location of the files. Click *Next*. The confirmation screen is displayed.
  - 6 Click *Finished*. The database restoration process is executed.
- **To backup both the Master and FrontOff databases**
- 1 From the System Administrator menu, select Technical Support and then Sqlmnt. The Administrator password is requested.
  - 2 Enter the password and click *OK*. The Database Executable Options window is displayed.
  - 3 Click (select) the “Execute backup operation (BACKUPDBS)” radio button and click *OK*. The operation is executed as the SQL Maintenance Utility window displays its progress. The backup zip files are placed in the folder specified in the “Setup the backup operation” option. When finished, you are returned to the Main Menu.



## Rsession Parameters

An Rsession is a communication channel that supports communication between the MFS1 server, the MFS2 and each POS terminal. Defining Rsession parameters enables Code Distribution software upgrades and prevents overloads in MFS1.

**Note:**

These parameters can also be set within General System Parameters. See Chapter 1 **System Parameter Tree** for more information.

➤ **To set or modify the Rsession Parameters**

- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support and then Rsession Parameters. The Rsession Parameters window appears:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Rsession Parameters". It is divided into two main sections. The top section, labeled "POS", contains a checkbox labeled "Rsession Active" which is currently unchecked. The bottom section, labeled "RsmSrv API Call", contains two input fields. The first is "Max No. of Tills to Upgrade Simultaneously" with the value "0" entered. The second is "Rsession Communication Time out" which is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "OK", "Cancel", and "Apply".

- 2 Set the options and parameters, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

Parameter	Description
Rsession Active	This parameter enables the Rsession feature and associated parameters. It is recommended to always check the Rsession Active checkbox. Selecting this checkbox ensures that the system will not overload.
Max No. of tills to upgrade simultaneously from one server	This parameter specifies the maximum number of POS terminals to upgrade simultaneously. For example, if the store has 20 POS terminals, they may elect to upgrade only 10 POS terminals simultaneously. A maximum of 30 POS terminals can be upgraded simultaneously.
Rsession communication time out	This parameter is disabled and will always be set to 0.

## Code Distribution Management Parameters

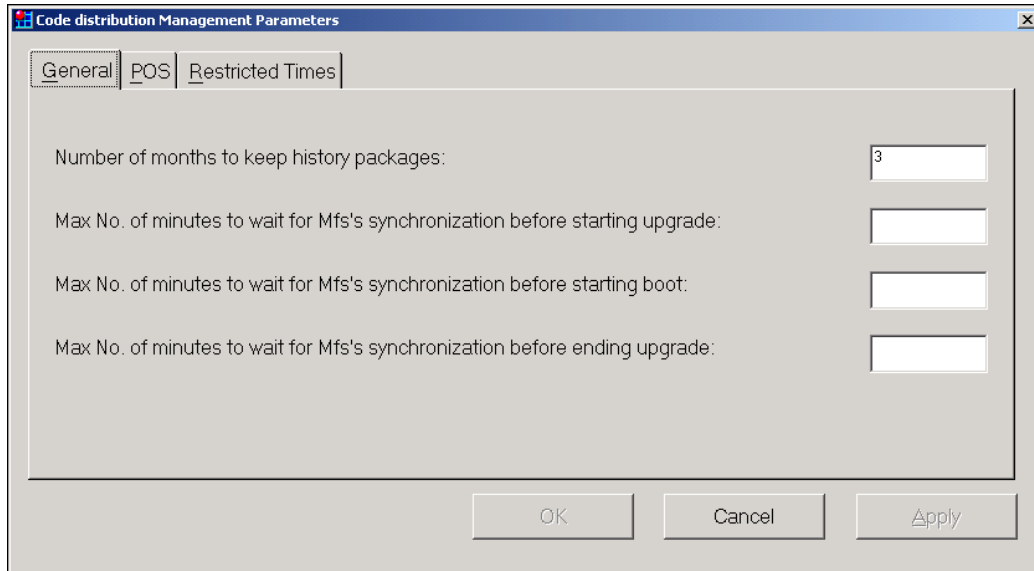
Code Distribution is a software application that automatically distributes and performs software upgrades to the POS terminals. Code Distribution enables POS terminals to upgrade automatically when in Sign-off mode. In Sign-on mode, system parameters provide options to enable seamless software upgrades without interfering with normal sales transactions.

### Note:

The POS Tab parameters can also be set within General System Parameters. See Chapter 1 **System Parameter Tree** for more information.

- **To set or modify the Code Distribution Parameters**
- 1 From the System Administration menu, select Technical Support and then Code Distribution Management Parameters.

The Code Distribution Management Parameters window appears:



- 2 Set the options and parameters within the General, POS and Restricted Times Tabs, as described below.
- 3 Click *OK* or *Apply* to save.

**General Tab**

Parameter	Description
Number of Months to Keep History Packages	This parameter specifies the number of months to wait before the housekeeping function of Code Distribution removes upgrade packages from both the Done and Reject folders.
Max No. of Minutes to Wait for MFS's Synchronization before Starting Upgrade	This parameter specifies the number of minutes to wait for MFS1 and MFS2 to become synchronized before starting a high-sensitivity package upgrade.

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
Max No. of Minutes to Wait for MFS's Synchronization before Starting Boot	This parameter specifies the number of minutes to wait for MFS1 and MFS2 to become synchronized before starting a reboot after a high-sensitivity package upgrade.
Max No. of Minutes to Wait for MFS's Synchronization before Ending Upgrade	This parameter specifies the number of minutes to wait for MFS1 and MFS2 to become synchronized before ending a high-sensitivity package upgrade.

**POS Tab**

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Description</b>
No. of Tickets Between Retries of Upgrade	This parameter specifies the number of sale tickets that can be processed, after which a cashier prompt message will reappear and Code Distribution will retry the POS terminal software upgrade in Sign-on mode.
Max No. of Seconds Between Retries of Upgrade	This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) after which a cashier prompt message will reappear, and Code Distribution will retry the software upgrade.
Max No. of Seconds to Wait for User Confirmation	This parameter specifies the interval (in seconds) that Code Distribution will wait for cashier confirmation before it automatically starts the upgrade.

## Restricted Times Tab

Parameter	Description
Start	Enter the beginning time (i.e. 23:00 = 11:00 PM) of the range to exclude Code Distribution operations (for the designated day or day range).
End	Enter the ending time of the range to exclude CDS operations (for the designated day or day range). After this time Code Distribution can run.
Select Days	Place a check mark next to the days where the Code Distribution restrictions should apply.

**Note:**

If a Code Distribution begins on MFS1 before a Restricted Time, the store will continue the upgrade process. If the package cannot run because of a Restricted Time, it will be retried after the next EOD and Alert 2975 (Blackout Period) will be issued.

## Package Maintenance

For information on activating and monitoring upgrades via Package Maintenance, please see the *Code Distribution Administrator's Guide*.



# 8

## Utilities & System Alerts

*ISS45 Utility functions included in this chapter include LAN Monitoring, Date & Time, CCMS Log, Audit Queries and Accounting Date.*

*System alerts notify office staff or management of technical problem, security violations, and other irregular or exceptional situations on the POS terminals or Back Office computers.*

*Alert messages are displayed on a Back Office workstation, recorded in a log, added to the Event Viewer, and/or sent to defined recipients, depending on the specified parameters.*

### *In this chapter:*

**LAN Monitoring,**  
page 8-4

**System Alerts Overview,**  
page 8-9

**Alerts Log,**  
page 8-11

**Alerts Maintenance,**  
page 8-16

**Alerts Parameters,**  
page 8-28

**Alerts Recipient,**  
page 8-29

**Date & Time,**  
page 8-37

**CCMS Log,**  
page 8-38

**Audit Queries,**  
page 8-39

**Accounting Date,**  
page 8-43

**Table Extracts,**  
page 8-44





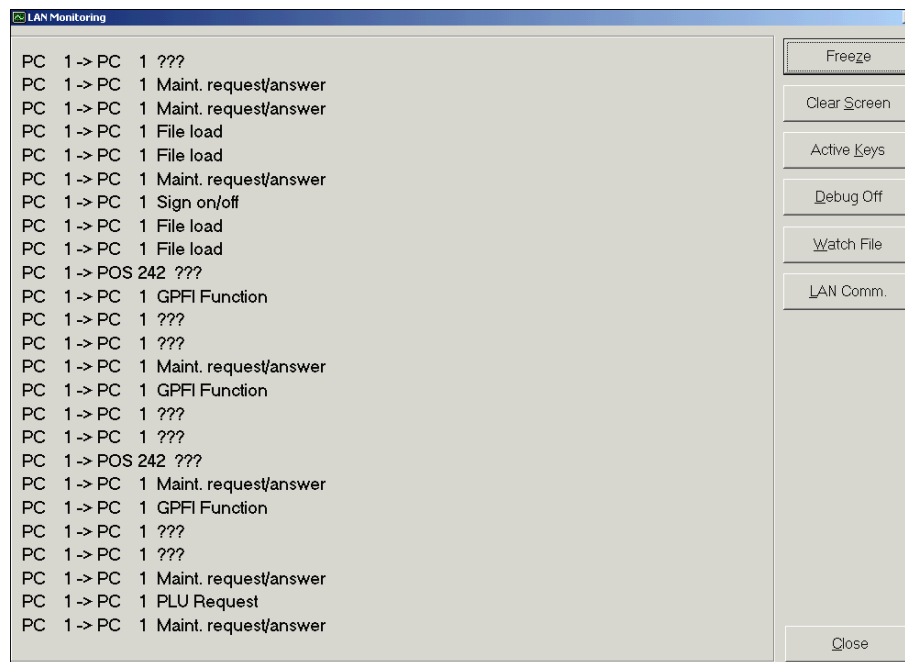
## Electronic Journal

Electronic Journal functionality is covered in the StoreNext ISS45 Office User's Guide.

## LAN Monitoring

The LAN Monitoring option provides an on-line, real time display of the network activities, showing the communication status between the various workstations. Technical personnel can also use the LAN Monitor for debugging purposes.

To access this option, select LAN Monitoring from the Maintenance & Utilities menu. The basic LAN Monitoring screen displays.



From the basic LAN Monitoring screen, the following monitoring functions are available.

## Freeze

This toggle function freezes the LAN monitoring in the display.

Select this function to freeze the display. The caption on the push button changes “Freeze On”. Select it again to continue real time monitoring. The button caption returns to “Freeze Off”, the default for this function.

## Clear Screen

The Clear Screen function erases all LAN messages in the display, and monitoring continues again.

## Active Keys

This function displays all the currently loaded QDX files and SQL Tables. The following information displays for each QDX file:

- File number
- Path and file name
- File size

The following information displays for each SQL Table:

- Table Name
- Number of Records

QDX			SQL	
No.	File Name	Keys	Table Name	Keys
82	c:\WinPOS\qdx\menusys.qdx	559	vwMSG_CNTR	1
83	c:\WinPOS\qdx\pos200.qdx	4001	vwMSG_CNTR_IMM	0
84	c:\WinPOS\qdx\postouch.qdx	5100	vwMfr	1720
85	c:\WinPOS\qdx\posmon.qdx	123	vwOLD_WRK_DT	1
86	c:\pcmaster\qdx\ktrpt.qdx	6	vwOperatorLaneAccountingTotals	24
87	c:\pcmaster\qdx\binData.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneAccountingTotalsC	3
88	c:\pcmaster\qdx\basket.qdx	50001	vwOperatorLaneAccountingTotalsF	0
89	c:\pcmaster\qdx\card_pg.qdx	1	vwOperatorLaneAccountingTotalsF	22
90	c:\WinPOS\qdx\trp_prom.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneIssuesPickups	3
91	c:\WinPOS\qdx\SMCR_TRS.QDX	0	vwOperatorLaneIssuesPickupsCum	0
93	c:\pcmaster\qdx\vd_cpn.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneIssuesPickupsOld	0
94	c:\pcmaster\qdx\posacc.qdx	22	vwOperatorLaneIssuesPickupsPrev	3
95	c:\pcmaster\qdx\alert.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneMiscellaneous Tran	0
96	c:\pcmaster\qdx\gen_db.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneMiscellaneous Tran	0
99	c:\WinPOS\qdx\p2cpt.qdx	2501	vwOperatorLaneMiscellaneous Tran	0
100	c:\pcmaster\qdx\alhist.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneSalesTotals	3
101	c:\pcmaster\qdx\access.qdx	21771	vwOperatorLaneSalesTotalsCurrent	1
106	c:\pcmaster\qdx\vouchers.qdx	51	vwOperatorLaneSalesTotalsDid	0
107	c:\pcmaster\qdx\PrePay.qdx	0	vwOperatorLaneSalesTotalsPrev	8
108	c:\pcmaster\qdx\OLA.Qdx	0	vwPLU_BATCH_ITEMS	0
109	c:\pcmaster\qdx\PumpStat.qdx	601	vwPLU_GROUP_ITEMS	289
110	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Totals.qdx	0	vwPLU_RPT	56242
111	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Tantiread.qdx	0	vwPLU_SELECTION_CRITERIA	56242
112	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Delivery.qdx	0	vwPLU_SUM	217841
113	c:\pcmaster\qdx\trp200v.QDX	3	vwPOST_CSHR_FG	1
114	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Alarms.qdx	0	vwPRICE_LIST	3
115	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Cash/ash.qdx	0	vwPRDM_ITEM	0
116	c:\pcmaster\qdx\Receipt.qdx	0	vwQFieldList	954
117	c:\pcmaster\qdx\ARFS.qdx	601	vwQFileList	63
118	c:\PCMASTER\QDX\Estratnl.qdx	0	vwRemote	603
135	c:\pcmaster\qdx\barcode.qdx	6	vwSRV_FEE	7
141	c:\PCMASTER\QDX\PriceLat.qdx	5	vwSignOnMsg	1
151	c:\pcmaster\qdx\ncsc_cpn.qdx	0	vwTABE_WGT_DESCR	20
167	c:\pcmaster\qdx\message.qdx	0	vwqdcUST_SURV_QST	2
190	c:\pcmaster\qdx\cust25.qdx	0		
191	c:\pcmaster\qdx\cust1024.qdx	0		

Both lists are scrollable. Highlight the desired list and use the *up arrow*, *down arrow*, and *Page Up*, *Page Down* keys to scroll the list. To return to the LAN Monitoring screen, select *Close*.

## Debug

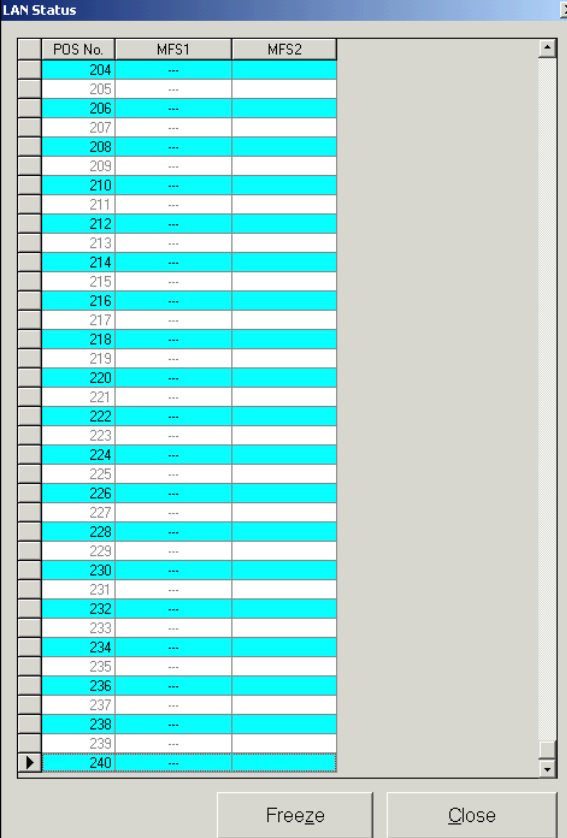
This toggle function displays LAN messages in hex and text format, making it easier for technical personnel to see what's happening in the system.

Select this function to display messages in HEX. The caption on the push button changes to "Debug On". Select it again to display messages in text format. The button caption returns to "Debug Off", the default for this function.

## Watch File

This function displays communication messages similar to those you see in the basic LAN monitoring screen, but also displays the date and time of each message using Notepad. In addition, you can also scroll backward and forward through the messages.





The screenshot shows a window titled "LAN Status" with a table of data. The table has three columns: "POS No.", "MFS1", and "MFS2". The rows are numbered from 204 to 240. The "MFS1" and "MFS2" columns contain "..." for all rows. The table is scrollable, and the "Freeze" and "Close" buttons are visible at the bottom.

POS No.	MFS1	MFS2
204	...	...
205	...	...
206	...	...
207	...	...
208	...	...
209	...	...
210	...	...
211	...	...
212	...	...
213	...	...
214	...	...
215	...	...
216	...	...
217	...	...
218	...	...
219	...	...
220	...	...
221	...	...
222	...	...
223	...	...
224	...	...
225	...	...
226	...	...
227	...	...
228	...	...
229	...	...
230	...	...
231	...	...
232	...	...
233	...	...
234	...	...
235	...	...
236	...	...
237	...	...
238	...	...
239	...	...
240	...	...

Select the Freeze function to freeze the display. The caption on the push button changes "Freeze On". Select it again to continue real time monitoring. The button caption returns to "Freeze Off", the default for this function. To return to the LAN Monitoring screen, select *Close*.

## System Alerts Overview

Systems alerts are messages that are automatically generated when certain predefined events or transactions occur. They may appear as a pop-up message that is displayed on a server in the Back Office or on a workstation. In addition, the system can be programmed to record alerts in a log or to send a message to designated recipients using a number of methods, for example, email or fax.

The System Alerts menu is located in the Utilities folder in the Main Menu.

This chapter contains the following sections:

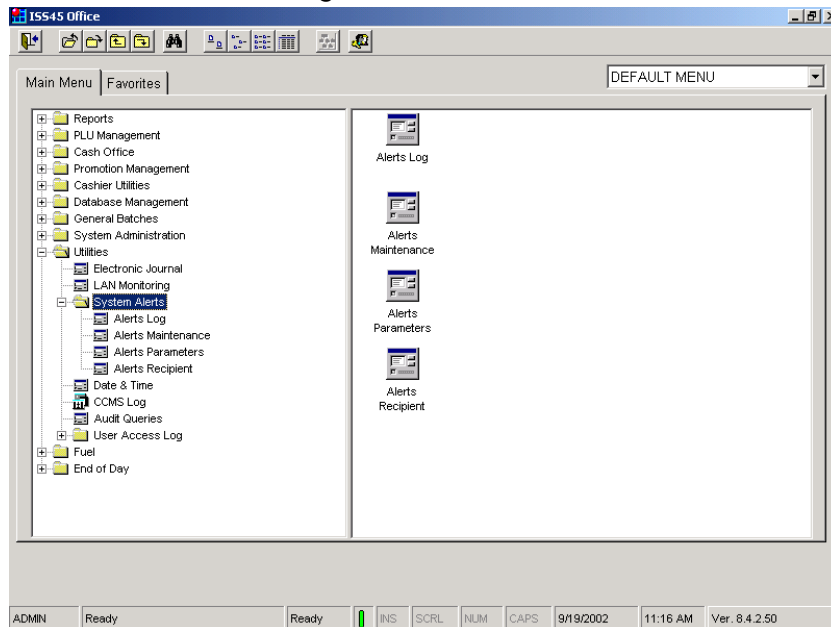
- **Alerts Log**, page 8-11, displays a record of the alerts that the system has generated, together with the time of the alert and when it was acknowledged.
- **Alerts Maintenance**, page 8-16, enables you to add and/or edit alerts, to define their importance and who should receive them.
- **Alerts Parameters**, page 8-28, enables you to define which servers and/or workstations should receive alerts.
- **Alerts Recipient**, page 8-29, enables you to define recipients of system alerts and their contact information.

## Accessing the System Alerts Menu

The Systems Alerts menu is located in the Utilities folder.

➤ **To access the System Alerts menu**

- 1 From the Utilities folder, select System Alerts. The System Alerts components are displayed in the System Alerts menu, and also as icons on the right side of the window.



# Alerts Log

The Alerts Log provides management with a record of all alerts generated in the ISS45 system. You can access this log and display all the alerts, or you can search for and display specific alerts.

➤ **To access the Alerts log**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu in the Utilities folder, double-click Alerts Log or double-click on the *Alerts Log* icon on the right of the window. The Alerts Log dialog box displays.

Generated Date	Report
11/01/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
09/16/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
09/04/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
08/28/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
07/29/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
07/24/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
06/07/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
05/30/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
05/24/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
05/23/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>
05/17/2002	<input type="checkbox"/>

- 2 Select the *All* checkbox to display all alerts in the log or clear the *All* checkbox and search for specific alerts, as described in the following section.
- 3 Click *OK*.
- 4 The Alerts Log window is displayed showing all the alerts in the log.

Alert ID	Alert Description	POS/PC	POS/PC ID	Generated	Acknowledgement	User Name
222	PKG= FUNC=238 PC_ERR= 222	PC		1/5/2005 3:26:36 PM		ADMIN
222	PKG= FUNC=238 PC_ERR= 222	PC		1/23/2004 11:08:58 AM		ADMIN
223		PC		1/5/2005 3:26:36 PM		ADMIN
223		PC		1/23/2004 11:08:58 AM		ADMIN
301	CRC error difference between QDX and SQL	PC		1/5/2005 3:27:53 PM		ADMIN
202	End of day has finished	PC		1/23/2004 11:28:51 AM		ADMIN
222	PKG= FUNC=238 PC_ERR= 222	PC		1/23/2004 11:35:41 AM		ADMIN
223		PC		1/23/2004 11:35:41 AM		ADMIN
201	End of day has started	PC		1/23/2004 11:39:53 AM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 3:39:07 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 3:39:09 PM		ADMIN
89	File refresh	POS		1/3/2005 3:39:14 PM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 3:44:26 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 3:44:27 PM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 3:47:00 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 3:47:00 PM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 4:13:37 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 4:13:38 PM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 4:15:45 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 4:15:46 PM		ADMIN
35	Cold start	POS		1/3/2005 4:15:46 PM		ADMIN
31	Store open	POS		1/3/2005 4:15:48 PM		ADMIN
30	Power Up / Reboot	POS		1/3/2005 4:21:19 PM		ADMIN
80	Software Version	POS		1/3/2005 4:21:20 PM		ADMIN
35	Cold start	POS		1/3/2005 4:21:20 PM		ADMIN
31	Store open	POS		1/3/2005 4:21:22 PM		ADMIN

**Note:**

Click **Filter** to access the Alerts Log dialog box in order to search for further alerts.

## Searching for Specific Alerts

You can use the Alerts Log dialog box, described on the previous page, to search for specific alerts, for example, alerts generated at a certain POS terminal or at a specific time.

- **To search for specific alerts**
  - 1 From the System Alerts menu in the Utilities folder, double-click on Alerts Log or from the Alerts Log window, click **Filter**. The Alerts Log dialog box is displayed, as shown on page 8-11.
  - 2 Clear the *All* checkbox and enter information in the other fields, as described below.

Field	Description
From Alert / To Alert	Enter the range of alerts you want the log to display.

Field	Description
From POS / To POS	Enter the range of POS terminal ID numbers, to see alerts for those terminals only.
From PC / To PC	Enter the range of PC ID numbers, to see alerts for those PCs only.
From Time / To Time	Enter the time range during which the alerts should have been generated.

**Note:**

You can enter information into more than one of these fields at the same time, to make your search more specific.

- 3 Click the *Without Acknowledge Time* checkbox if you do not require the log to display information about when the alerts were acknowledged by the recipients.
- 4 Click the relevant radio button in the *Period* area of the dialog box to specify that you want to see alerts from a specific period.

Field	Description
All Dates	Searches for alerts generated on all dates.
Today	Searches for alerts generated on the current day.
Selection	Enables you to find alerts from specific dates.

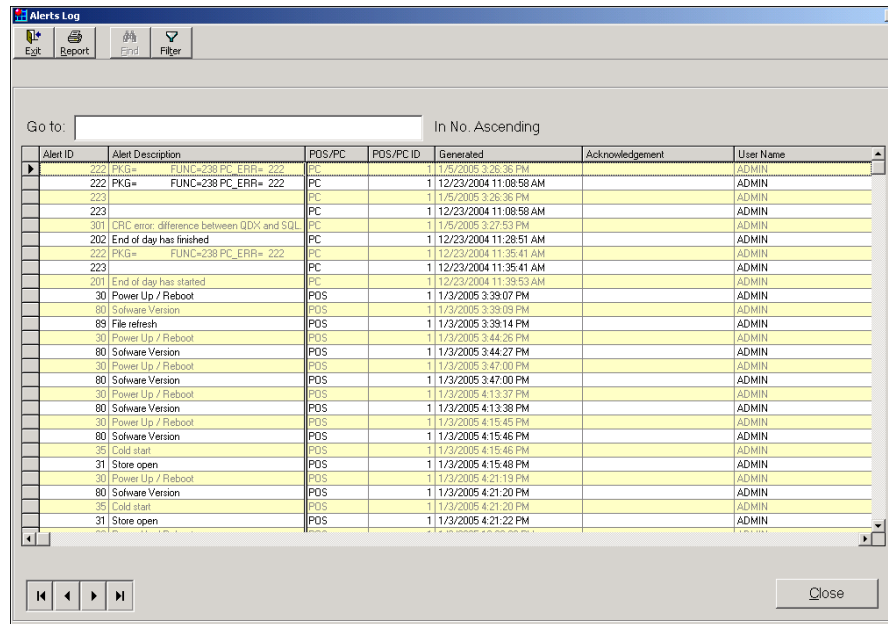
- . If you click the *Selection* radio button, select the appropriate checkboxes in the report field in the *Period* area, to select specific daily alert logs.
- 5 Click *OK*. The Alerts Log window displays the selected alerts that were found, according to your search.

**Note:**

If the *Ignore This Alert* checkbox was checked when the Alert was defined, the alert will not be displayed in the Alerts Log.

## Alerts Log Window

The Alerts Log window displays the alerts in the Alerts Log. The specific alerts displayed in the window depend on your search, as described on page 8-11.





The Alert Log window contains the following:

- **Toolbar**

The following buttons are displayed in the toolbar at the top of the window:

Button	Description
	Exits the Alerts Transaction window and returns to the main <b>ISS45</b> window.
	Opens a Report Manager window that displays a preview of the report to be printed. For more information about the Report Manager window, refer to the <i>Reports Reference Manual</i> .



Button	Description
	The Find tool is not enabled in this version.
	Displays the Alerts Log dialog box, enabling you to search for a different set of alerts. Refer to <i>Searching for Specific Alerts</i> , on page 8-12, for further information.

■ **Go To Field**

The *Go to* field enables you to specify the alert ID code that you want to select in the list of alerts.

**Note:**

This function is currently unavailable.

■ **Alerts Log List**

Alerts are listed, together with their basic information. Each column heading represents a different field of information.

Field	Description
Alert ID	The code number for the specific alert.
Alert Description	The description for the alert.
POS/PC	Whether the alert was generated from a POS terminal (POS) or the Back Office (PC).
POS/PC ID	ID number of the POS terminal or PC.
Generated	Date and time the alert was generated.
Acknowledgement	Date and Time that the recipient acknowledged the alert. (If the Without Acknowledge Time checkbox was checked in the Alerts Log dialog box, shown on page 8-11, this field will be empty.)
User Name	Name of the user who acknowledged the alert.

■ **Search Arrows**

Enable you to scroll through the alerts list.



Use the arrows at the extreme left and right to navigate to the first and last alerts in the list. The center arrows enable you to navigate up and down the list by single alerts.

## Sorting the Alerts Log List

The list of alerts in the Alerts Log window can be sorted by any of the displayed information fields.

➤ **To sort the Alerts Log**

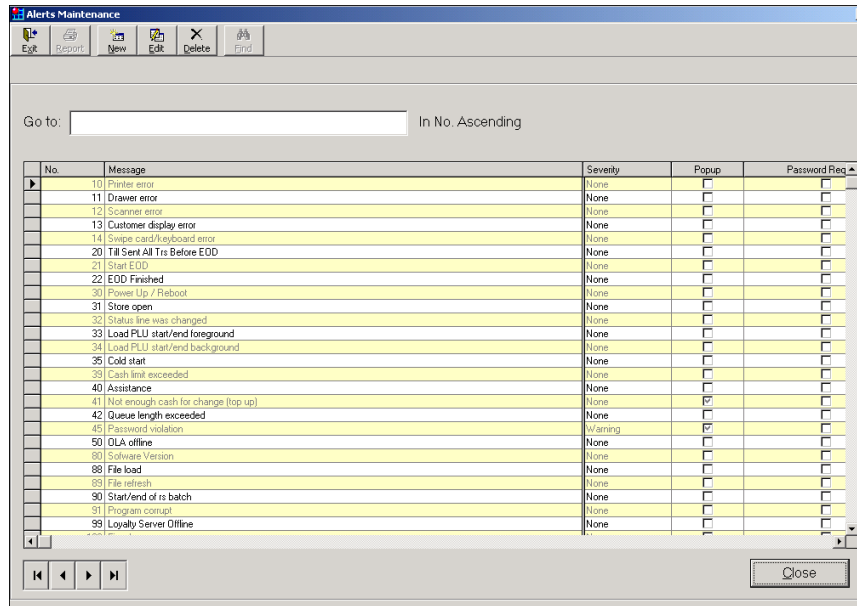
- 1 Click on the column heading representing the information by which you require the log to be sorted. It will be sorted in ascending order.
- 2 Click a second time on the same column heading to sort the log in descending order. For example, if you click on the *Alerts ID* title once, the log will be sorted by Alerts ID code in ascending order. If you click *Alerts ID* a second time, the log will be sorted by Alerts ID code in descending order.

## Alerts Maintenance

The Alerts Maintenance function enables you to define alerts and their behavior. ISS45 is already configured with numerous alerts, which you can view in the Alerts Maintenance window. New alerts may be defined if required.

➤ **To access the Alerts Maintenance window**




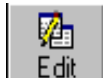


- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Maintenance or double-click on the *Alerts Maintenance* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Maintenance window is displayed.



The Alerts Maintenance window comprises the following components:

■ **Toolbar**

The following buttons are displayed in the toolbar at the top of the window:

Button	Description
	Exits the Alerts Maintenance window and returns to the ISS45 window.
	The Report tool is unavailable for this function.
	Enables you to add new alerts.
	Enables you to edit an existing alert.
	Enables you to delete an existing alert.
	The Find tool is not enabled in this version.

### ■ Go To Field

The *Go to* field enables you to specify the alert ID code that you want to select in the list of alerts. After you have selected the field by clicking on the column heading, enter a number or letter, as appropriate, to specify to which alert you require the arrow to point.

### ■ The Alerts List

System alerts are listed in a table in the center of the Alerts Maintenance window. The following information fields are provided for each alert:

Field	Description
No.	The unique alert code.
Message	The message that will be displayed when the alert is generated.
Severity	The severity level that has been attached to the alert.
Popup	Checked to indicate that the alert will generate a popup message.
Password	Selected to indicate that a password must be entered in order to acknowledge the alert. This prevents unauthorized personnel from acknowledging alerts.
Ignore	Selected to indicate that alert is deactivated.

### ■ Selection Arrows

Enable you to scroll through the alerts list.



Use the arrows at the extreme left and extreme right to navigate to the first and last alerts in the list. The center arrows enable you to navigate up and down the list by single alerts.

## Predefined Alerts

The following alerts have been predefined in the system.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
10	Printer Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with in-lane printer, for example, 'Paper Low' or 'Printer Busy'.
11	Drawer Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with the cash, for example, 'Unauthorized opening of a cash drawer'.
12	Scanner Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is a problem with the scanner.
13	Customer Display Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is a problem with the customer display.
14	Swipe Card/Keyboard Error	Displays at the POS terminal when there is an error with the magnetic card reader.
20	Till Sent All Trs Before EOD	POS sent all Transaction data before EOD started
21	Start EOD	EOD has started on a specific POS terminal.
22	EOD Finished	EOD has finished on a specific POS terminal.
30	Power Up / Reboot	A specific POS terminal was powered up or rebooted.
31	Store Open	The Store Open process, which is generated from the Back Office, generated a transaction from the POS terminal. (Only once a day.)
32	Status line was changed	This alert is not currently available.
33	Load PLU Start/End Foreground	This alert displays at the POS terminal, when a Data Refresh of the PLU file will take place in the foreground.

<b>Alert Code</b>	<b>Alert</b>	<b>Description</b>
34	Load PLU Start/End Background	This alert displays at the POS terminal, when a Data Refresh of the PLU file will take place in the background.
35	Cold Start	The memory of a POS terminal was cleared of all information. This function is generally performed by a manager or technical support person, in order to clear a problem in the POS terminal.
39	Cash Limit Exceeded	Displays when the cash in the drawer exceeds the maximum amount set in the system.
40	Assistance	Assistance of a supervisor required (generally in order to remove excess cash from the cash drawer).
41	Not enough cash for change (top up)	The level of cash in the cash drawer is insufficient to provide change.
42	Queue length exceeded	The number of customers in the queue entered, exceeds the maximum number set in the system. (The number of customers in the queue is entered by the cashier, who is prompted by the system to enter the information into the terminal.)
45	Password violation	A password has been incorrectly entered.
50	OLA Offline	Displays when communications is lost to the Pay-at-the-Pump Payment System. (Used only with Fuel.)
80	Software version	Displays which software version is running on a specific POS terminal.
88	File Load	A file load from the Back Office was received by the POS terminal.
89	File Refresh	A maintenance update from the Back Office was received by the POS terminal.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
90	Start/End of RS Batch	Displays at the start/end of a Rsession at the POS terminal.
91	Program Corrupt	This alert is currently not supported.
99	Loyalty Server Offline	Displays at the POS terminal when the Customer Loyalty Server is offline.
102	Fiscal Error	This alert is supported in Europe and currently not required in North America.
103	Start Fiscal EOD	This alert is supported in Europe and currently not required in North America.
110	Message Received	A message sent from the Message Center has been received.
112	CCMS.QDX on POS is full. Please call for technical support	This alert is used for Corema and OEM. It is Posted when the loyalty QDX file is full and requires manual intervention to clear it. (Note: The Loyalty QDX file name is CCMS.QDX.)
113	POS Email	This alert is sent by the POS terminal to MFS1 or MFS2 when using the internal email functionality (between the POS terminal and MFS).
114	POS not Sign as Active in "POS Configuration". Call Support!	This alert displays when the POS terminal is not flagged as an active till in the Post Configuration parameters. (Refer to <i>Chapter 2, POS Setup</i> , in this manual.)
115	POS Disk Size Limit	Insufficient disk space is detected at the POS terminal.
201	End of day has started	EOD for the Back Office has begun.
202	End of day has finished	EOD for the Back Office has been completed.
203	POS offline during EOD	A POS terminal was offline when EOD was started in the Back Office.

<b>Alert Code</b>	<b>Alert</b>	<b>Description</b>
206	Not all transactions sent by POS before EOD	Some of the transactions sent from the POS terminals were not received in the Back Office prior to EOD being run.
207	Not all maintenance received by POS before EOD	Some of the maintenance updates sent from the Back Office to the POS terminals were not received by the terminals before EOD was started.
222	Package	This alert is reserved for future development.
232	No COMM to POS. POS offline?	A POS terminal may be offline.
233	3 Password Violations in Secure Mode	Displays at the Back Office when there is a 3 password violation in Secure Mode at a POS terminal.
236	Error while executing PLU batch	One of the daily PLU batches was not created successfully.
239	MFS2 did not receive QDX and SQL. See End of Day Logs	Displays when MFS2 does not receive complete QDX and SQL updates from MF1, during the EOD.
299	Unauthorized drawer opening	The specified cash drawer was opened without authorization.
300	General text transaction	An alert generated by a third party transaction or 'hook', together with 'free' text.
301	CRC error: difference between QDX and SQL. See End of Day logs.	When the QDX data and the SQL data were compared, inconsistencies were found.
601	Disk Space Below Limit	Insufficient disk space is detected on the MFS or workstation.
602	CDM	This alert is reserved for future development.

Alert Code	Alert	Description
1000	Grade Price changes pending. View General Batches for details.	Displays when there are pending fuel price changes. (Used only with Fuel.)
17001	Printer unable to scan the check	Indicates the printer could not perform an ECC (Electronic Check Conversion) scan of the check
17009	EBT WIC Error File Found	Indicates EBT WIC Error files have been detected.

**Note:**

Error files are placed in the C:\Program Files\POSware\Office\EBT\_WIC\State Name folder. At EOD an Alert is generated and the error file is placed in the C:\Program Files\POSware\Office\EBT\_WIC\State Name\ History folder.

**Note:**

Alert code numbers 21 - 115 relate to alerts generated by POS terminals. Numbers 201 - 1000 are for alerts generated by the Back Office Servers. Numbers 1001 - 2000 are user-programmable. Alerts numbered 20000 (and greater) are available to be added to the POS Menu (through the Keyboard Macro Tool's "Services" function).

## Defining Alert Specifications

You can set parameters to define if and when alerts should be displayed, what the severity level should be and how predefined recipients should be notified. In addition, you can specify which recipients will receive the alert. For further information about alerts recipients, refer to *Alerts Recipient*, on page 8-29.

These parameters are defined when you add a new alert. In addition, you can modify the parameters of an existing alert, as described below.

➤ **To modify an alert**

- 1 In the Alerts Maintenance window, highlight the alert that requires modification and click *Edit* or double-click on the alert that requires modification. The Alert Maintenance tabbed dialog box is displayed, showing all the current parameters for the selected alert.

- 2 In the Alert tab of the dialog box, enter the required information and/or select the checkboxes to generate the relevant activity.

The following fields are available:

Field	Description
Message	Type the Alert message that is to be displayed when the specific event occurs.
Severity	Select a severity level for the alert from the dropdown list. Severity levels are described on page 8-26.

Field	Description
Pop-Up Message	Select this box if you want the alert to pop-up on the defined workstations, as described in the section, <i>Defining Which PCs Receive Alerts</i> , on page 8-28. If Pop-Up Message is not selected, and the Ignore this Alert checkbox is unchecked, the alert will still be displayed in the Alerts log if the relevant event occurs.
Password Required on confirmation	Select this box if you want the user to enter a user name and password in order to acknowledge receipt of the alert. This prevents unauthorized personnel from acknowledging alerts.
Ignore This Alert	The alert remains in the system's memory but does not generate any alerts or appear in the Alerts Log.
Add to NT Event Viewer	Sends the alert to NT Event Viewer to be displayed in the system log.
Timeout between confirmation and re-alert, minutes	Type in a number representing the number of minutes before the system checks for the alert again. Set this parameter to a high value in order to avoid having the same type of alert pop up too frequently. For a critical type alert, set the value to 1 minute.
Auto Confirm Alert After 1 Minute	Select this checkbox to automatically confirm the alert after one minute.

- 3 Click *Apply* to save the changes and leave the dialog box open or click *OK* to save the modifications and exit the dialog box.

**Note:**

The *Recipients* tab enables you to specify who will receive the alert. Refer to *Alerts Recipient* on page 8-29, for more information.

## Adding a New Alert

If necessary, you can create new system alerts. A new alert needs to be defined, for example, when a new event on the POS

terminal is created and you need to report on all occurrences of the event.

➤ **To add a new alert**

- 1 In the Alerts Maintenance window, click *New*. The Alerts Maintenance parameters dialog box is displayed.
- 2 Enter a new number for the alert in the *Number* field. Remember that user-programmed alerts can only have numbers from 1001 - 2000.
- 3 Follow Steps 2-3 in the procedure for defining alert specifications on page 8-24.

## Deleting an Alert

This function is used to delete an alert from the alert list.

➤ **To delete an alert**

- 1 In the Alert Maintenance window, highlight the alert to be deleted and click *Delete*. A message box pops up requesting confirmation that the alert is to be deleted.
- 2 Click *Yes* to delete the alert or *No* to retain the alert.

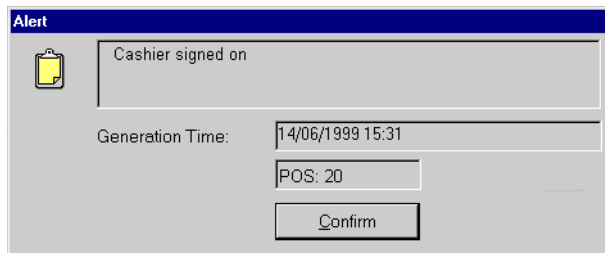
**Note:**

You can deactivate an alert by checking the *Ignore this Alert* checkbox in the appropriate Alert Maintenance parameters dialog box, without needing to actually delete it.

## Alert Severity Levels

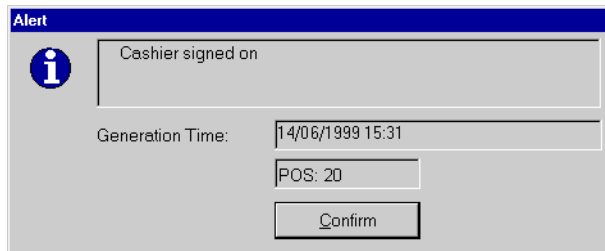
Each alert has an associated severity level. The severity level of alerts is selected from a dropdown list in the Alerts Maintenance parameters dialog box for the relevant alert.

The alert messages that pop up on the server/workstation screen reflect the severity of the alert by means of an icon, as shown in the pictures below. Note that the alert pop-ups display information about the specific alert, together with details of when the alert was generated and from which POS terminal or workstation it was generated.

**Severity: None**

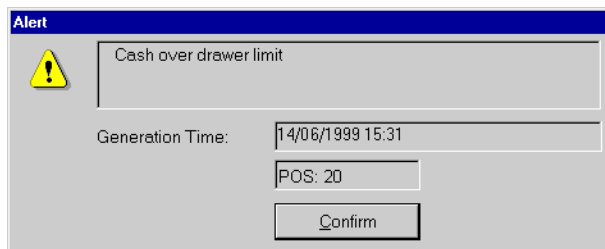
The alert dialog box has a blue title bar with the word "Alert" in white. On the left side, there is a yellow clipboard icon. The main text area contains "Cashier signed on". Below this, the "Generation Time:" is displayed as "14/06/1999 15:31". Underneath that, "POS: 20" is shown. At the bottom center, there is a button labeled "Confirm".

The None severity level can be used when you wish to be alerted about general functions, for example, a cashier signing on at the start of their shift. This alert level is interchangeable with the Information alert, described below.

**Severity: Information**

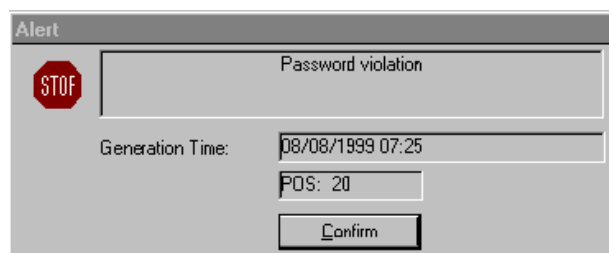
The alert dialog box has a blue title bar with the word "Alert" in white. On the left side, there is a blue information icon (a lowercase 'i' in a circle). The main text area contains "Cashier signed on". Below this, the "Generation Time:" is displayed as "14/06/1999 15:31". Underneath that, "POS: 20" is shown. At the bottom center, there is a button labeled "Confirm".

The Information severity level can be used when you wish to be alerted about general functions, for example, a cashier signing on at the start of a shift. This alert level is interchangeable with the None alert, described above.

**Severity: Warning**

The alert dialog box has a blue title bar with the word "Alert" in white. On the left side, there is a yellow warning icon (an exclamation mark in a triangle). The main text area contains "Cash over drawer limit". Below this, the "Generation Time:" is displayed as "14/06/1999 15:31". Underneath that, "POS: 20" is shown. At the bottom center, there is a button labeled "Confirm".

The Warning severity level can be used for events that could become emergencies if not dealt with quickly, for example, a cashier having too much cash in the cash drawer.

**Severity: Emergency**

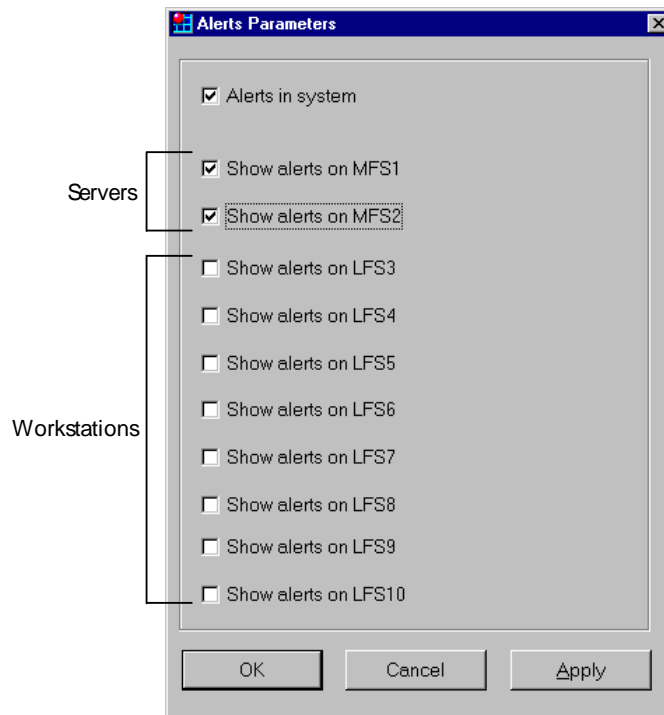
The Emergency severity level can be used for events that need immediate attention. For example, password violations or unauthorized opening of a cash drawer.

## Alerts Parameters

After defining alerts, you need to specify to which servers or workstations the alerts should be sent. You can do this by accessing the Alerts Parameters option in the System Alerts menu.

➤ **To specify PCs to receive alerts**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Parameters or double-click on the *Alerts Parameters* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Parameters dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the checkboxes next to the servers and workstations on which you want the alerts to be displayed.
- 3 Click the *Alerts in system* checkbox. If this checkbox is not checked, no alerts will be created.

**Note:**

“Alerts in System” must be checked if you are using the Pocket Office RMA (Remote Manager Authorization) Module.

- 4 Click *OK* to register your selection and exit the dialog box.

## Alerts Recipient

You can send alerts to specific recipients in the following ways:

- By email
- By fax
- To a pager
- To a host computer

An alerts recipient can be any of the following:

**A Person:** An alert can be sent to a person by email, fax or a pager.

**Note:**

The alert will not be flagged as treated until it has been successfully sent.

**A Host Computer:** An alert can be sent to a specific computer, for example, Head Office.

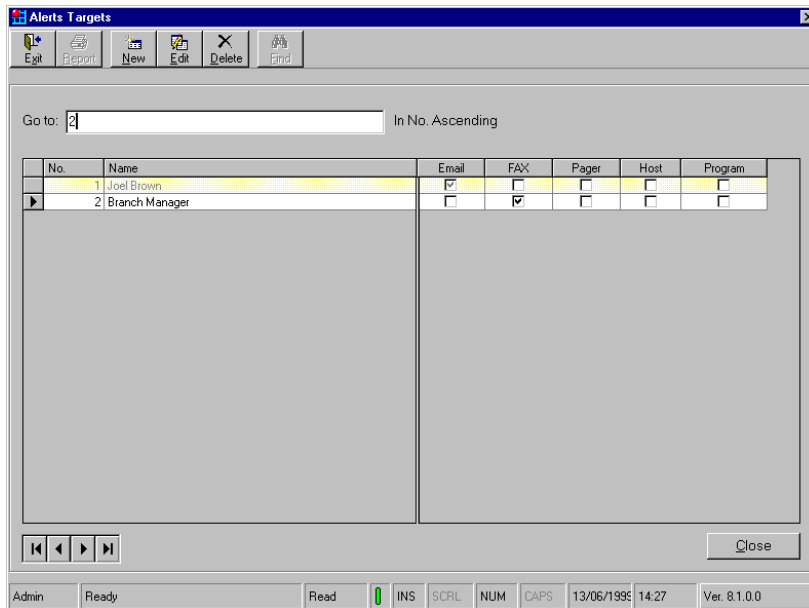
**A Program:** An alert can be sent to a specific program, for example, data from an alert can be written to a text file in a text editor such as Notepad.

## Adding a New Alerts Recipient

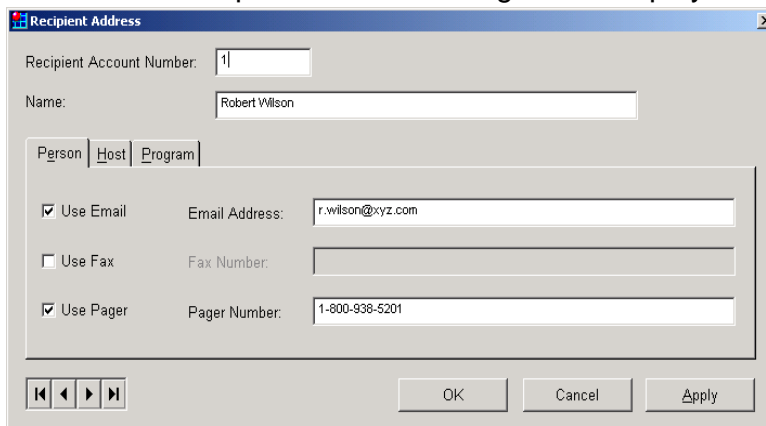
Multiple alerts recipients may be defined in the system. You can then specify which alerts should be sent to which recipients, as described on page 8-35.

➤ **To define a new alerts recipient**

- 1 From the System Alerts menu, double-click on Alerts Recipients or double-click on the *Alerts Recipient* icon on the right side of the window. The Alerts Recipients dialog box is displayed.



- . The Alerts Recipients dialog box displays a list of alerts recipients that have already been defined. The notification method that is active for each recipient is also displayed.
- 2 Click *New*. The Recipient Address dialog box is displayed.



- . The recipient is automatically given the next sequential number in the *Recipient Account Number* field.
- 3 Type the name of the recipient in the *Name* field.
- 4 Specify the required recipient destinations in the appropriate fields in the *Person*, *Host* and *Program* tabs, as described in the following section.

- 5 Click *Apply* to save the information and keep the dialog box open or click *OK* to save the information and return to the Alerts Recipients dialog box.

## Recipient Address Dialog Box

The Recipient Address dialog box contains three tabs, *Person*, *Host* and *Program*, each of which enables you to specify different recipient destinations. If an alert is sent to this recipient, it will reach all the recipient destinations you specify in these tabs.

### Person Tab

The *Person* tab enables you to specify, in the fields provided, how the alerts should be sent to the recipient.

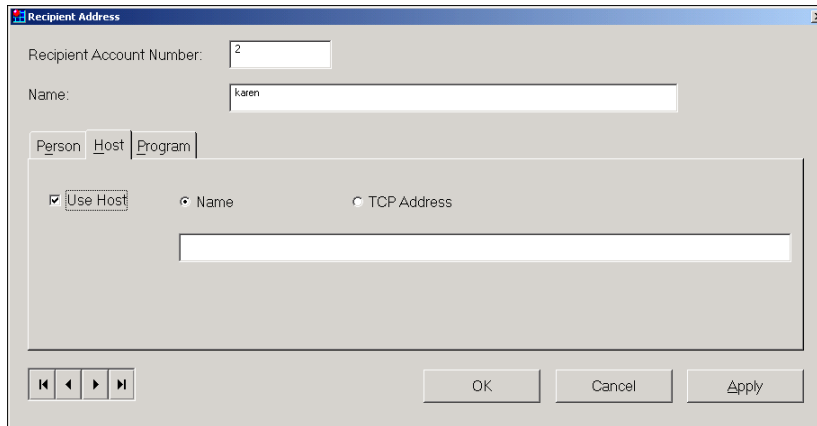
Field	Description
Use Email	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by email.
Email Address	Enter the recipient's email address.
Use Fax	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by fax.
Fax Number	Enter the recipient's fax number.
Use Pager	Select the checkbox if the recipient is to be advised of alerts by pager.
Pager Number	Enter the recipient's pager number.

#### Tip:

You can specify more than one method by which an alert will be sent to a recipient, for example, by both fax and email. If you clear one of the checkboxes, the alert will not be sent by that method. However, the specific address or number will be retained in memory for use at a later time, if required.

### Host Tab

The *Host* tab enables you to specify a computer to which an alert will be sent.

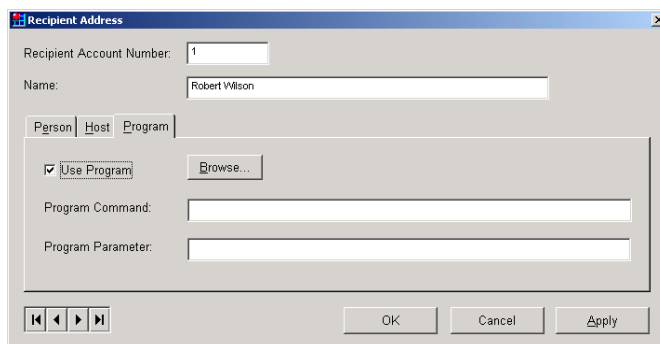


The *Host* tab contains the following fields:

Field	Description
Use Host	Select this checkbox if you want alerts to be sent to a specific computer.
Name	Click this radio button and enter the name of the computer in the field below.
TCP Address	Click this radio button and enter the TCP/IP address of the computer below.

### Program Tab

The *Program* tab enables you to define an application to which data from an alert can be sent.



The *Program* tab contains the following fields:

<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Use Program	Select this checkbox if you want alerts to be sent to a specific program.  Note: The <i>Browse</i> button allows you to find the path to the program. Selecting the location of the program using the <i>Browse</i> button will automatically enter the directory, path and name of the program in the Program Command field, below.
Program Command	Enter the directory, path and name of the program.
Program Parameter	You can specify the program switches or parameters, in order to define how the program should run or what functions it should perform.

## Editing Alerts Recipients

Information that has been entered into the Recipient Address dialog box can be modified, if required.

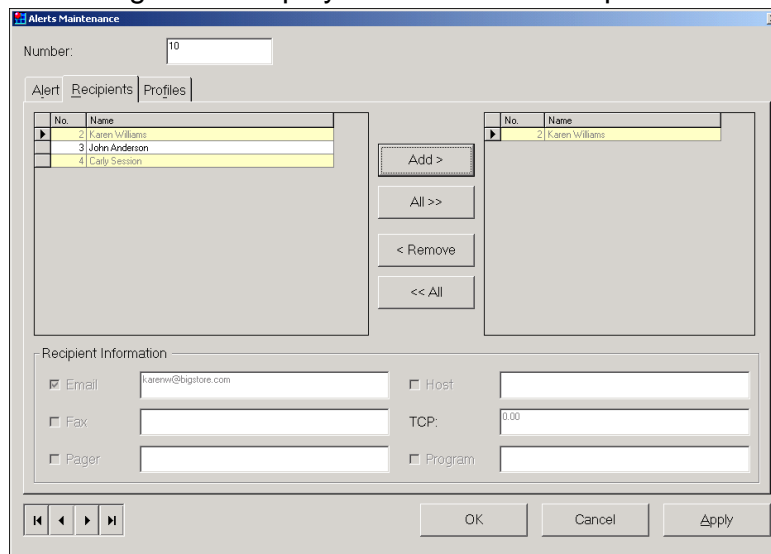
### ➤ To edit alerts recipients information

- 1 In the Alerts Recipients dialog box, highlight the recipient that requires modification and click *Edit* or double-click on the recipient, which requires modification. The Recipient Address dialog box is displayed, showing all the current parameters for the selected recipient.
- 2 Change the information as required. Refer to the section *Adding a New Alerts Recipient*, on page 8-30, for further information.

## Specifying Which Recipients Receive an Alert

For each alert, you can specify the recipients to which the alert will be sent.

- **To specify the recipients that will receive an alert**
- 1 Double-click on an alert in the list in the Alerts Maintenance window, as shown on page 8-16. The Alerts Maintenance tabbed dialog box is displayed. Select the Recipients tab.



- 2 In the *Recipients* tab, select a recipient from the list on the left and click **Add >**. The recipient's name and number are displayed on the right. Repeat this procedure to select other recipients for the alert or click **All >>** to add all the recipients.

### Note:

To remove a recipient after it has been selected, select the recipient in the list on the right and click **< Remove**, or click **<< All** to remove all selected recipients.

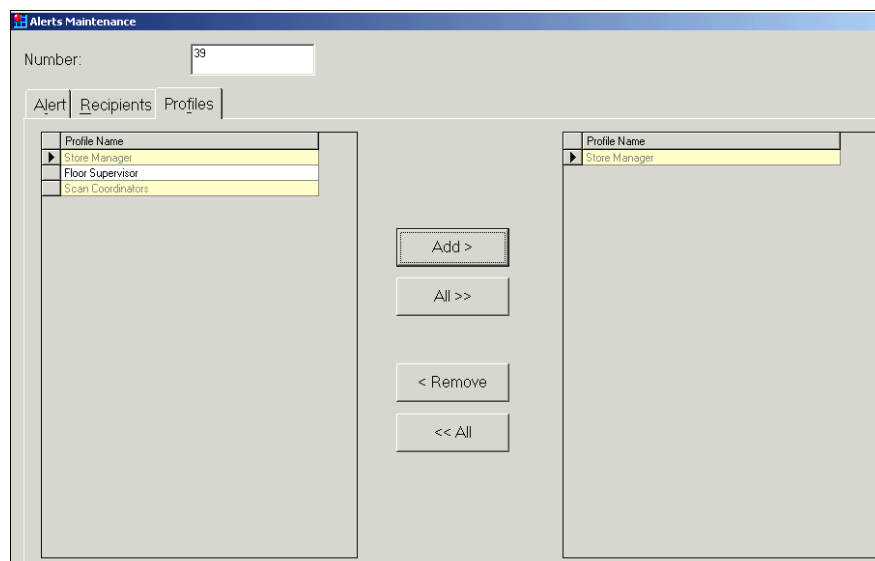
- 3 When finished, click *OK* or *Apply*.

## Linking Profiles to Alerts

Front Office Users Profiles that have been previously established (see *Profile Maintenance* in Chapter 5, Menu Builder and Menu Editor) may be linked to specific alerts. For sites implementing Pocket Office's Remote Authorization (RMA) Module, all Front Office Users using RMA that are within a profile linked to a specific alert will be notified when that alert is generated. RMA Users can then be either "Approve" (respond) to the alert or "Ignore" it (bypass taking action).

### ➤ To link user profiles to a chosen Alert

- 1 Double-click on an alert in the list in the Alerts Maintenance window, as shown on page 8-16. The Alerts Maintenance tabbed dialog box is displayed. Select the Profiles tab.



- 2 In the *Profiles* tab, select a profile from the list on the left and click . The profile's name and number are displayed on the right. Repeat this procedure to select other profiles for the alert or click  to add all the recipients.
- 3 When finished, click *OK* or *Apply*.

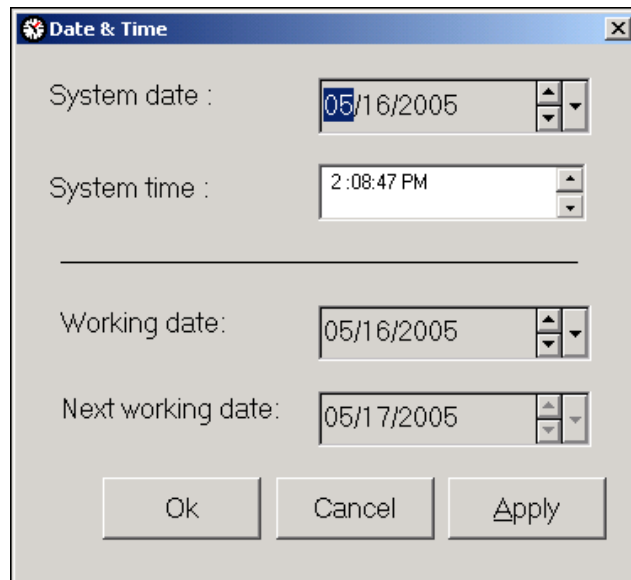
## Date & Time

The Date and Time option is used to change the date and time in POS terminals and the computers (MFSSs). Use this option to also change the current working date when Automatic End of Day is active.

### Note

The first time you set up Automatic End of Day, you have to reset the current working date. The next working date is automatically calculated (and cannot be changed). After you've set the End of Day parameters, check the date here and change it if required.

When you change the date and time through this function, the system automatically changes the date and time in all POS terminals and other PCs in the back office. To access this option, select Date and Time from the Utilities Folder.

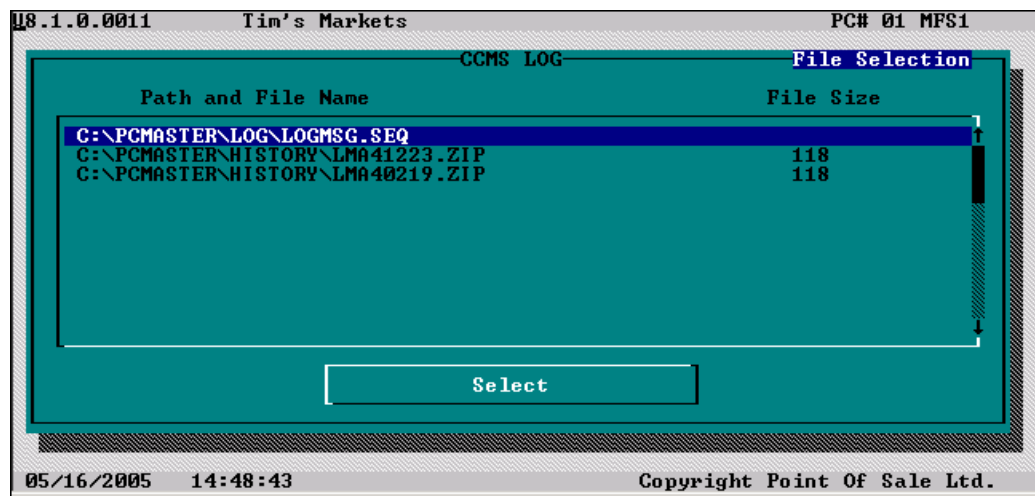


The current system date displays in the System Date field. Accept this date, enter a new date or click the field selection arrow and select a new date from the calendar. The System Time field displays the system time. Accept this time or enter in the correct time. If you run Automatic End of Day in your store, reset the current working date as required. The Next Working

Date field cannot be accessed. When you reset the Current Working Date, the Next Working Date is automatically incremented by 1.

## CCMS Log

This option provides a log report of CCMS messages sent and received from the CCMS (Club Card Maintenance Server). The log is provided only if your system works with CCMS server connection.



# Audit Queries

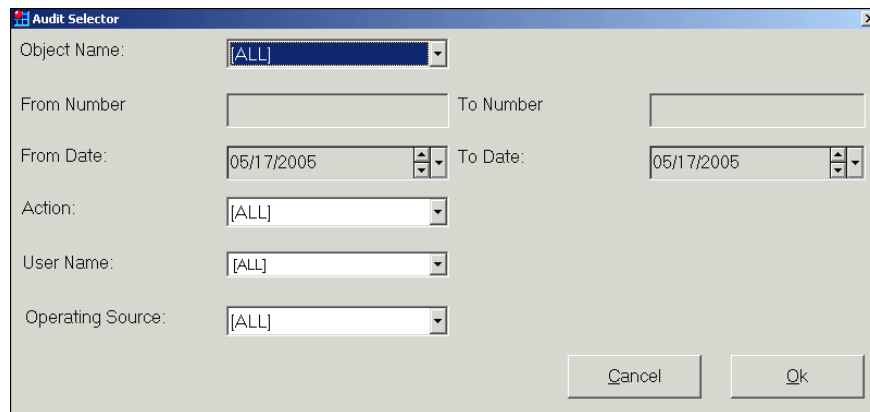
The Audit Queries option provides the ability the view PLU and Promotion additions, changes and deletions logged through ISS45’s auditing feature.

**Note:**

The General System Parameter “PLU Items Data Tracking” (located in the Store \ Front Office \ PLU and Batch \ PLU Options \ Auditing folder) must be enabled to log PLU modifications. The parameter “Audit Levels” (found in the same folder) determines the detail being logged. The amount of history available for querying is set in the General System Parameter “Number of History Days of Audit Query” (located in the Store \ Front Office \ End of Day \ Archive) folder.

➤ **To query the PLU and Promotion Audit Log**

- 1 From the Utilities folder, select Audit Queries. The Audit Selector window appears, defaulting the query date range to today’s date.

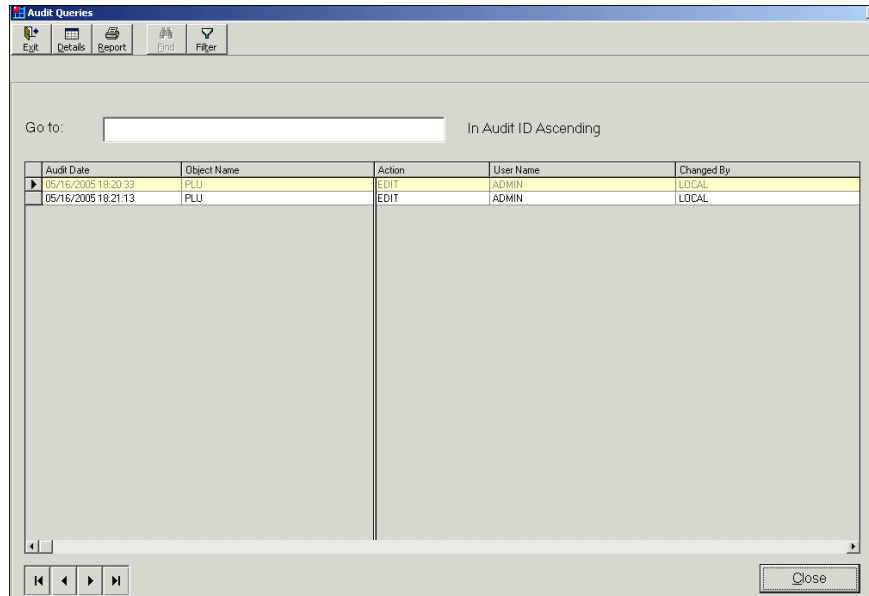


2 Complete the fields as follows to narrow your log search:

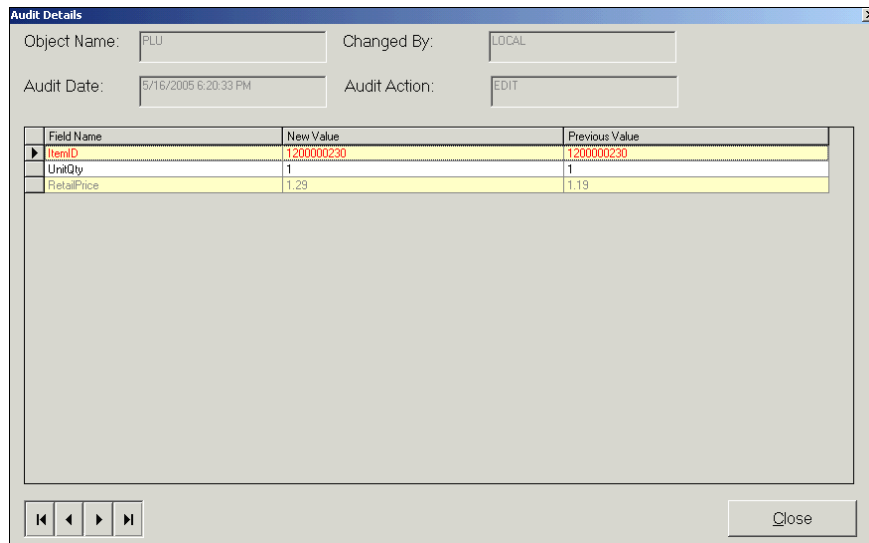
<b>Field</b>	<b>Description</b>
Object Name	Click the field section arrow and choose one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>ALL – Display all PLU, Member Promotion, Link Member Promotion and Grade modifications</b></li> <li>• <b>Promotions – Display all non-Member Promotion modifications</b></li> <li>• <b>Member Promotions – Display all Member Promotion modifications</b></li> <li>• <b>Link Member Promotions – Display all modifications to promotion attachments</b></li> <li>• <b>Grade – Display all Fuel Grade Modifications (using Fuel Office)</b></li> </ul>
From Number	Based on the Object Name selection (above), enter the beginning PLU, Promotion or Grade search range number
To Number	Enter the ending PLU, Promotion or Grade search range number
From Date	Enter the beginning modification date for the search range
To Date	Enter the ending modification date for the search range

Field	Description
Action	<p>Click the field selection arrow and choose the following modification filter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>ALL – Include all modification types</b></li><li>• <b>Deletion – Include only those (PLU, Promotions or Grades) that have been deleted.</b></li><li>• <b>Edit – Include only those (PLU, Promotions or Grades) that have been edited.</b></li><li>• <b>New – Include only those (PLU, Promotions or Grades) that have been added.</b></li></ul>
User Name	<p>Click the field selection arrow and choose a Front Office user (to search on modifications by that user only).</p>
Operating Source	<p>Click the field selection arrow and choose the source of the modification:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>ALL – Include all sources</b></li><li>• <b>Local – Include only made within the store.</b></li><li>• <b>Host – Include only made from the Host.</b></li><li>• <b>External Device – Include only made using an external connection.</b></li></ul>

- 3 When finished, click *OK*. The filtered results are displayed:



- 4 To see the details of modification, highlight the record and click the Details button. The Field Name, New Value and Previous Value are displayed.



- 5 Click *Close* to return to the filtered results list.

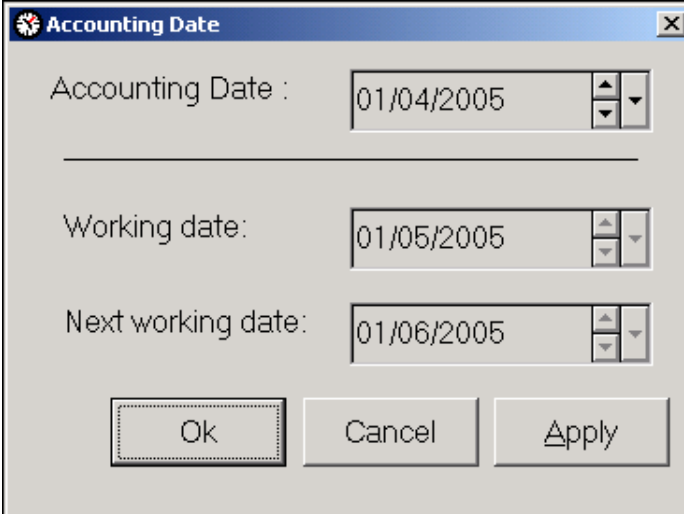
## Accounting Date

ISS45 safe data can be linked to a user-specified accounting date rather than a current working date. This feature will allow the store to perform cash office accounting procedures for the prior day (after the EOD and after the working date has been incremented).

**Note:**

The General System Parameter "Accounting Date in System" must be (located in the Store \ Cash Office \ Safe Parameters folder) must be enabled. The related parameter "Allow Manually Changing the Accounting Date" (in the same folder) determines whether the accounting date can be changed.

To access this option, select Accounting Date from the Utilities Folder.



The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Accounting Date" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains three date input fields, each with increment and decrement buttons to its right. The first field is labeled "Accounting Date:" and contains "01/04/2005". The second field is labeled "Working date:" and contains "01/05/2005". The third field is labeled "Next working date:" and contains "01/06/2005". At the bottom of the dialog are three buttons: "Ok", "Cancel", and "Apply".

You may change the date by entering a date directly into the Accounting Date field, highlighting the date, month, year and clicking the increment/decrement buttons or by clicking the calendar selection arrow and selecting the date from a pop-up calendar.

When the Custom Weekly Accounting report is finalized, all Cash Office functions for the Working Date will be recorded as part of the Accounting Date. The safe will be locked (if not locked manually before finalization) and the Accounting Date will be rolled forward to match the current Working Date.

**Note:**

The Accounting Date will not be displayed on any of the ISS45 reports. It is used for accounting purposes relating to the CWA report.

## Table Extracts

The Table Extract Maintenance function allows you to define customized field extracts from the ISS45 database tables. Extracts can either be performed manually (through this function) or automatically during EOD. Exports can be performed in any of the following three formats:

- Text (**.txt** file extension)
- Excel (**.xls** file extension)
- XML (**.xml** file extension)

The Table Extract feature is controlled by flag 26 of the HASP Plug.

**Note:**

The General System Parameter "Path for Table Extracts" (located in the Store \ Front Office \ Table Extracts folder determines where the extracts are placed. The extracts at EOD will be always created on MFS1 even in the case the EOD was initiated from MFS2.

Manual Extracts are given file names based on the following format:

< Description>\_YYYYMMDDhhmmss.<file extension>

For example,

Departments\_20051227121556.xls

The name given to extract description "Departments" extracted in Excel format on December 27<sup>th</sup>, 2005 at 12:15:56 PM.

EOD Extracts are given file names based on the following format:

EOD\_< Description>YYYYMMDDhhmmss.<file extension>

For example,

EOD\_ PLUS\_20051017102513.xml

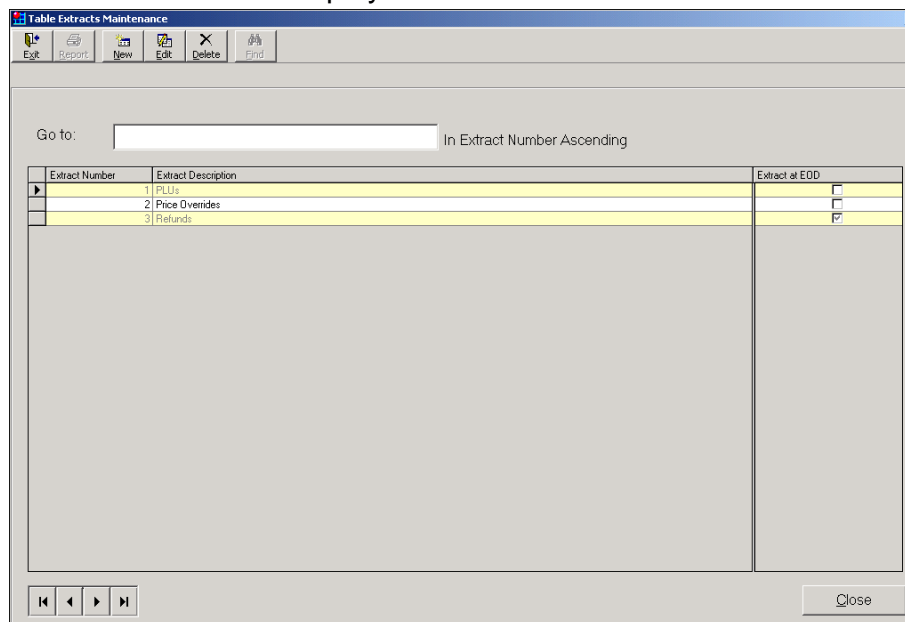
The name given to extract description “PLUs” extracted in XML format on October 17<sup>th</sup>, 2005 at 10:25:13 AM.

**Note:**

No housekeeping tasks are performed on extract files. It is the store's responsibility to remove unneeded files.

## Table Extract Maintenance




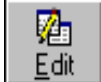


- **To access the Table Extract Maintenance window**
- 1 From the Table Extract folder, double-click on Table Extracts Maintenance or double-click on the *Table Extracts Maintenance* icon on the right side of the window. The Table Extracts Maintenance window is displayed.



The Table Extracts Maintenance window comprises the following components:

### ■ **Toolbar**

The following buttons are displayed in the toolbar at the top of the window:

Button	Description
	Exits the Table Extracts Maintenance window and returns to the ISS45 window.
	The Report tool is unavailable for this function.
	Enables you to add new extracts.
	Enables you to edit an existing extract.
	Enables you to delete an existing extract.
	The Find tool is not enabled in this version.

### ■ **Go To Field**

The *Go to* field enables you to specify the Extract Number that you want to select in the list of extracts. After you have selected the field by clicking on the column heading, enter a number or description, as appropriate, to specify to which extract you require the arrow to point.

### ■ **The Extracts List**

Extracts are listed in a table in the center of the Table Extracts Maintenance window. The following information fields are provided for each alert:

Field	Description
Extract Number	The extract code.
Extract Description	The description for the extract.
Extract at EOD	Checked to indicate that the extract will be performed during EOD.

## ■ Selection Arrows

Enable you to scroll through the extracts list.

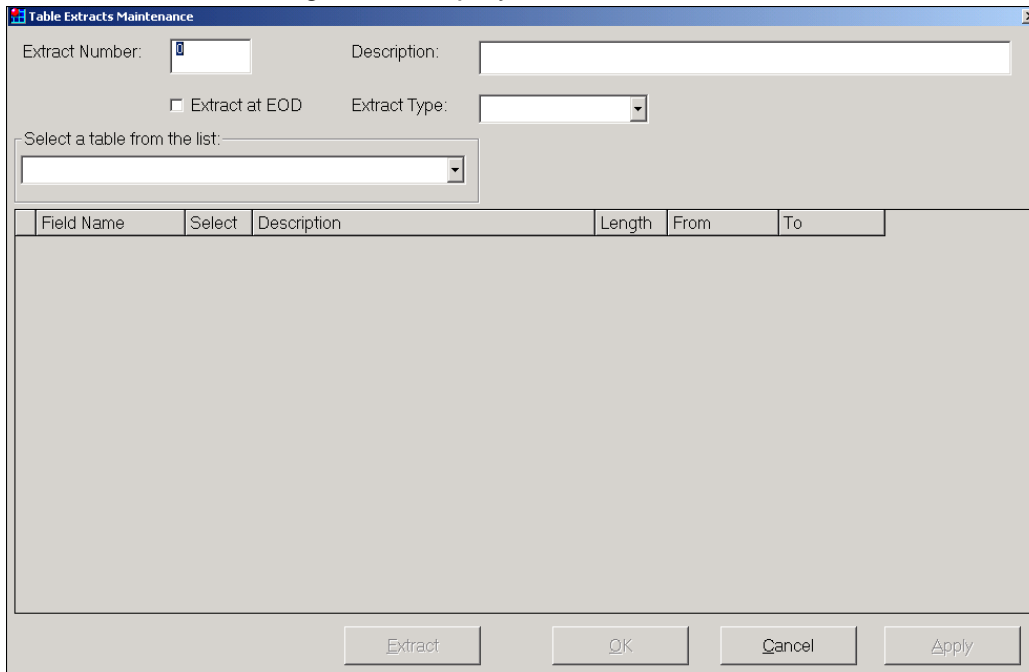


Use the arrows at the extreme left and extreme right to navigate to the first and last extracts in the list. The center arrows enable you to navigate up and down the list by one extract at a time.

## Adding a New Table Extract

### ➤ To add a new table extract

- 1 In the Table Extract Window, click *New*. The Table Extracts Maintenance dialog box is displayed.



Field Name	Select	Description	Length	From	To
------------	--------	-------------	--------	------	----

- 2 Enter the required information and/or select the checkboxes to design the customized extract.

The following fields are available:

Field	Description
Extract Number	Enter a unique extract number.
Description	Enter a description for the table extract.
Extract at EOD	Check this box to automatically perform the extract during EOD.
Extract Type	Click the field selection arrow and choose the desired extract format: Text, Excel or XML.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>If an extract is set to an Excel type and Microsoft Excel is not installed in the computer, the extract will not be performed and an error message will be sent to the event viewer and the log.</p>
Select a table from the list:	Click the field selection arrow and choose the table from which to extract. The table fields will display in grid rows.
Select	Check this box for each field to extract.
Description	The description will automatically populate with the actual field name from the database but may be overwritten.
Length	Designate the length for the field in the extract file. If left blank, the maximum length of the field will be used as defined in the database.
From	(Optional) Enter the lower limit for the range when filtering records based on a specific field.
	<p><b>Note:</b></p> <p>The From/To values entered for a specific field must be in the same format as in the relevant field in the table in the database. If the format of the value entered in the field doesn't match the actual format, the range will not give the correct results.</p>

Field	Description
To	(Optional) Enter lower limit for the upper limit when filtering records based on a specific field.

**Note:**

The “From” and “To” fields will support only numeric fields. In the case of date fields, the only options ISS45 will recognize are the current working date (CUR\_WRK\_DT) and the last working date (LAST\_WRK\_DT). The strings will be converted to the actual date and only the records that fall into the specific dates will be extracted. The options are:

From ‘LAST\_WRK\_DT’ To ‘LAST\_WRK\_DT’: this option will enable selecting the records from only the last working date from tables where this information is available.

From ‘LAST\_WRK\_DT’ To ‘CUR\_WRK\_DT’: this option will enable selecting the records from the last working date and the current working date from tables where this information is available [the DAY (history) tables don’t include current day’s info].

From ‘CUR\_WRK\_DT’ To ‘CUR\_WKR\_DT’: this option will enable selecting the records from only the current working date from tables where this information is available [the DAY (history) tables don’t include current day’s info].

- 3 Click *Apply* to save the changes and leave the dialog box open.
- 4 (Optional) Click *Extract* to generate the extract immediately. The extract will be displayed on the screen and placed in the designated folder.
- 5 Click *OK* to save the modifications and exit the dialog box.

## Deleting a Table Extract

This function is used to delete a table extract from the extracts list.

➤ **To delete an extract**

- 1 In the Table Extracts Maintenance window, highlight the extract to be deleted and click *Delete*. A message box pops up requesting confirmation that the extract is to be deleted.
- 2 Click *Yes* to delete the extract or *No* to retain the extract.



# 9

---

## User Access Log

*The User Access Log utility enables Management to track access to selected menu entries by users.*

*This utility also includes a Queries and Reports option.*

**User Access Log Utility,  
page 9-3**

**Selecting Menu Entries  
for Tracking, page 9-3**

**User Access Log  
Queries, page 9-5**



# User Access Log Utility

The User Access Log utility enables management to track user access to selected menu entries.

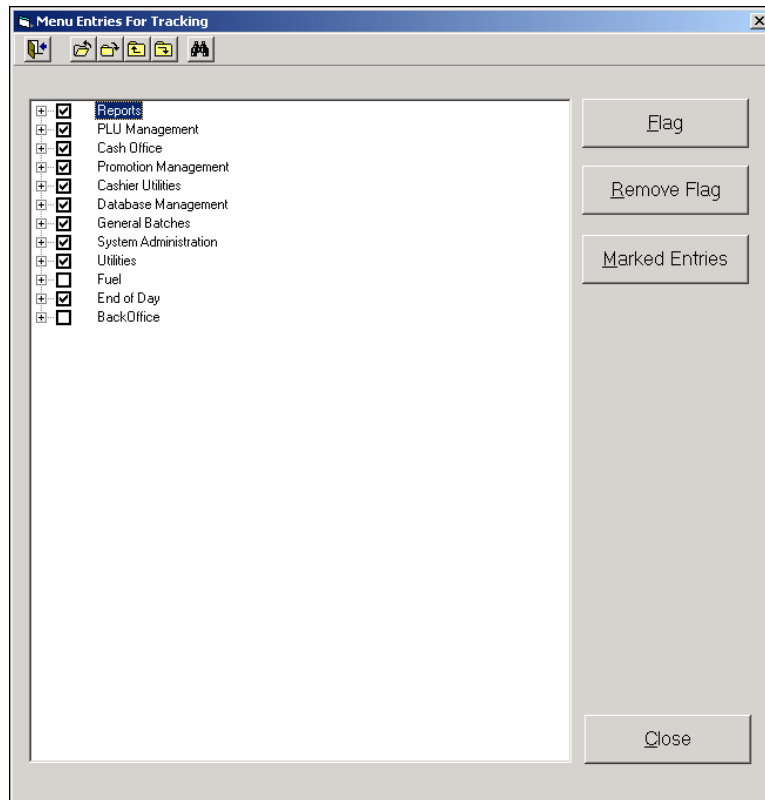
## Selecting Menu Entries for Tracking

At the initial stage of the tracking process, a manager selects specific menu entries (main menus or submenus) and flags them. Selecting a menu, automatically selects its submenus. However, selecting a submenu does not automatically select the menu of which it is a part. Data about each user who accesses any flagged Menu Entry is stored in a log file.

The steps below describe how to activate the User Access Log utility.

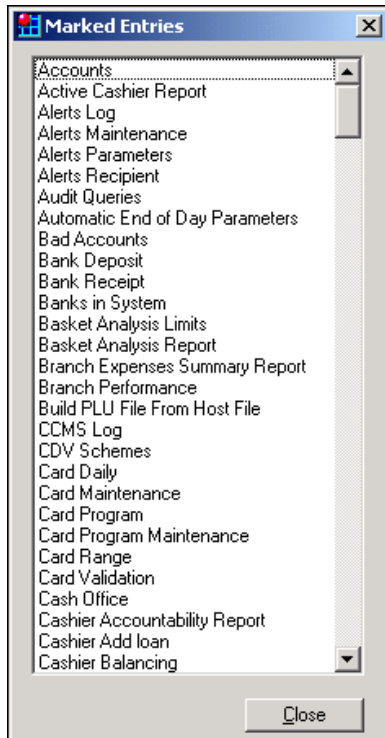
➤ **To select Menu Entries for Tracking**

- 1 From the Utilities menu, select User Access Log and then select Menu Entries For Tracking. The Menu Entries For Tracking dialog box is displayed.



- 2 Select the checkbox(es) for the required menu or submenu, or click on the menu and then click *Flag*.

- 3 Click *Marked Entries*. The Marked Entries dialog box is displayed, showing all the selected menus and submenus.



- 4 Click *Close* to close the Marked Entries dialog box.
- 5 Click *Close* to close the Marked Entries for Tracking dialog box. The selected entries are saved in the system so that each access to the selected menus will be tracked.

## User Access Log Queries

As previously explained, after Menu Entries have been flagged, a Log file is created. This Log file stores data about all users who accessed the flagged Menu Entries.

The User Access Log Queries option enables you to generate queries and reports that relate to data in the Log file. Generating queries is performed by defining the following:

- **Date and Time:** The time range to which the query is to be applied.

- **Users:** The user names to which the query is to be applied.
- **Menu Entries:** The menu entries to which the query is to be applied.

➤ **To access the User Access Log Queries Report**

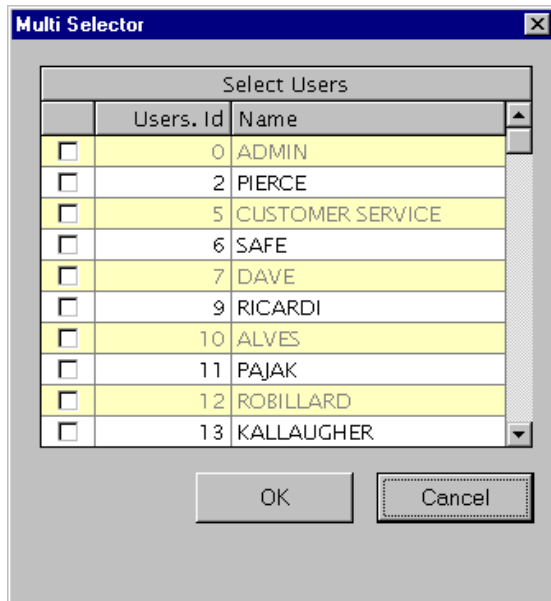
- 1 From the Utilities menu, select User Access Log and then User Access Log Query. The User Access Log Query dialog box is displayed.

The screenshot shows the 'User Access Log Query' dialog box. It features a title bar with the text 'User Access Log Query' and a close button. The dialog is organized into three main sections:

- Date And Time:** This section contains four input fields: 'From Date' (05/17/05), 'To Date' (05/17/05), 'From Time' (00:00), and 'To Time' (23:59). To the right of these fields are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.
- Users:** This section has a radio button for 'All' (which is selected) and a radio button for 'Selection:'. Below these is a list box containing 'All Users'. To the right of the list box are 'Add...' and 'Remove' buttons.
- Menu Entries:** This section has a radio button for 'All' (which is selected) and a radio button for 'Selection:'. Below these is a list box containing 'All Entities'. To the right of the list box are 'Add...' and 'Remove' buttons.

- 2 In the Date And Time selection area:
  - Select the required period in the *From Date* and *To Date* fields to specify a date range for the report.
  - Enter a time in the *From Time* and *To Time* fields to specify a time range, if required.

- 3 In the Users selection area, you can select the *All* radio button to enable you to select all the system users, or select the *Selection* radio button to enable you to select specific users. The Multi Selector dialog box is displayed.

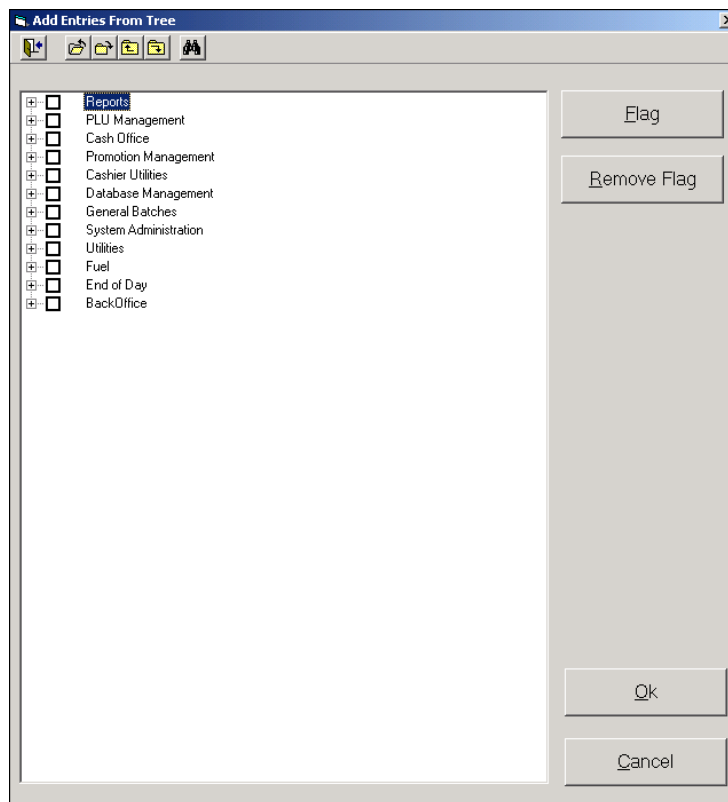


- 4 Select the checkboxes for the required user or users and click *OK*. The selected users are added to the Users selection area in the User Access Log Query dialog box.
- 5 You can modify the original selection by clicking the *Add* button in the Users frame. The Multi Selector dialog box is displayed. Add users as described in Step 4.

**Or**

You can modify the original selection by highlighting a user name in the Users frame and clicking the *Remove* button. The user name is deleted from the list.

- 6 In the Menu Entries selection area, you can select the *All* radio button to enable you to select all the menu entries, or select the *Selection* radio button to enable you to select the required menu entries. The Add Entries From Tree dialog box is displayed.



- 7 Select the checkbox(es) for the required menu or submenu, or click on a menu to select it and then click *Flag*.

**Note:**

You can click the expand buttons to the left of the checkboxes to display submenus.

- 8 Click *OK*. The selected menus are added to the Menu Entries selection area in the User Access Log Query dialog box.

- 9 You can modify the original selection by clicking the *Add* button in the Menu Entries selection area. The Add Entries From Tree dialog box is displayed. Add menus as described in Step 7.

**Or**

You can modify the original selection by highlighting a menu in the Menu Entries selection area and clicking the *Remove* button. The menu is deleted from the list.

- 10 Click *OK* in the User Access Log Queries selection dialog box to run the query based on your selections. The report data is displayed in the User Access Log Queries dialog box, showing the selected users and menu entries.

The screenshot shows a window titled "User Access Log Queries" with a toolbar containing "Exit", "Report", and "Filter" buttons. Below the toolbar is a "Go to:" text box and a sorting indicator "In Entry Date and Time Ascending". The main area contains a table with the following data:

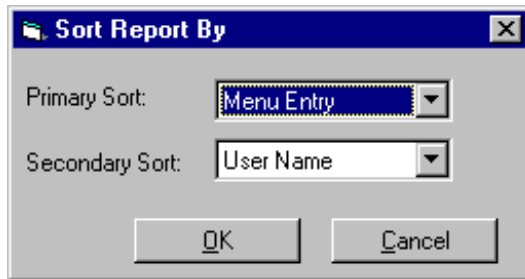
Entry Date and Time	Exit Date and Time	User Name	Menu Type	Menu Entry	Workstation
5/17/2005 9:01:23 AM	5/17/2005 9:01:47 AM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	MFS 1
5/17/2005 9:01:51 AM	5/17/2005 9:02:37 AM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 9:02:46 AM	5/17/2005 9:03:17 AM	ADMIN		Edit / Delete Promotion	MFS 1
5/17/2005 9:03:20 AM	5/17/2005 10:05:22 AM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	MFS 1
5/17/2005 10:38:17 AM	5/17/2005 12:24:52 PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 12:25:08 PM	5/17/2005 12:25:46 PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 12:26:04 PM	5/17/2005 12:28:34 PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 12:30:29 PM	5/17/2005 12:31:11 PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 1:05:12 PM	5/17/2005 1:05:32 PM	ADMIN		User Access Log Queries	MFS 1
5/17/2005 1:05:34 PM	5/17/2005 1:05:50 PM	ADMIN		Menu Entries For Tracking	MFS 1
5/17/2005 1:05:51 PM	5/17/2005 1:06:25 PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	MFS 1
5/17/2005 1:08:12 PM	5/17/2005 1:19:31 PM	ADMIN		Menu Entries For Tracking	MFS 1
5/17/2005 1:19:33 PM	5/17/2005 1:19:33 PM	ADMIN		User Access Log Queries	MFS 1

At the bottom of the dialog box, there are navigation buttons (Home, Left, Right, End) and a "Close" button.

**Note:**

In the User Access Log Queries dialog box, above, you can sort the data by a specific column by clicking on the appropriate column heading.

- 11 Click the *Report* icon. The Sort Report By dialog box is displayed.



**Note:**

The Primary and Secondary Sort Options reflect the various column headings in the User Access Log Report. The column headings are Entry Date, Exit Date, User Name, Menu Type, Menu Entry and PC Number. Refer to Step 13, below, for definitions of the column headings.

- 12 Select the required sorting option for the *Primary Sort* and *Secondary Sort* fields, and click *OK*. The User Access Log Report is displayed.

Printer Setup

Preview

100% 1 of 2

powered by crystal

**User Access Log Report**

Tim's Markets  
Branch 18

Enter Date	Exit Date	User Name	Menu Type	Menu Entry	Workst
5/17/2005 10:20:12AM	5/17/2005 10:22:58AM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 11:49:23AM	5/17/2005 11:52:08AM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 11:38:24AM	5/17/2005 11:59:44AM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:00:13PM	5/17/2005 12:08:43PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:08:46PM	5/17/2005 12:11:32PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:11:34PM	5/17/2005 12:11:54PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:14:47PM	5/17/2005 12:15:16PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:27:51PM	5/17/2005 12:47:29PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:49:10PM	5/17/2005 12:52:15PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 12:52:18PM	5/17/2005 1:41:15PM	ADMIN		Audit Queries	
5/17/2005 11:52:19AM	5/17/2005 11:58:12AM	ADMIN		Enhanced Promotions	
5/17/2005 11:59:50AM	5/17/2005 12:00:06PM	ADMIN		Enhanced Promotions	
5/17/2005 10:52:36AM	5/17/2005 11:43:18AM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	
5/17/2005 12:15:27PM	5/17/2005 12:19:21PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	
5/17/2005 1:41:24PM	5/17/2005 3:48:40PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	
5/17/2005 4:14:01PM	5/17/2005 4:15:24PM	ADMIN		General System Parameters	
5/17/2005 12:47:44PM	5/17/2005 12:49:06PM	ADMIN		Level Promotions	
5/17/2005 4:22:32PM	5/17/2005 4:27:31PM	ADMIN		Menu	
5/17/2005 12:12:01PM	5/17/2005 12:14:38PM	ADMIN		PLU Maintenance	
5/17/2005 4:27:33PM	5/17/2005 4:27:33PM	ADMIN		User Access Log Queries	

13 Click the *Print* icon to print the report.

The report that is produced displays the following information:

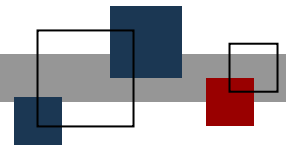
- **Enter Date:** The date and time that the user accessed the Menu Entry.
- **Exit Date:** The date and time that the user logged out of the Menu Entry.
- **User Name:** The name of the user who accessed the Menu Entry.
- **Menu Type:** The default menu that is displayed when the user logs into the system.
- **Menu Entry:** The name of the Menu Entry that was accessed by the user.
- **Workstation:** The workstation from which the user accessed the Menu Entry.











**© StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC 2008**

StoreNext Retail Technologies LLC endeavors to ensure that the information in this document is correct and fairly stated but does not accept liability for any error or omission.

The development of StoreNext products and services is continuous and published information may not be up to date. It is important to check the current position with StoreNext. This document is not part of a contract or license save insofar as may be expressly agreed.